ItalianPod101.com

LEVEL 1

LEARN ITALIAN BUNDLE

Easy Introduction for Beginners



ItalianPod101

innoVative LANGUAGE.COM

If You Love the Italian Language, Then You'll Love This!

You can download these bonus conversation-based PDF cheat sheets at ItalianPod101.com. Just sign up for a Free Lifetime Account and instant access today.

Get 30+ ItalianPod101.com PDF Cheat Sheets for Beginners...for **FREE**.



- **Learn Italian for Common Topics: Weather, Family, Hobbies & More**
- **Speak More Italian with Basic Conversation Guidest**
- **Boost Your Italian Vocabulary Fast**
- **Print & Use as Physical Study Material**

You can download these bonus conversation-based PDF cheat sheets at ItalianPod101.com.

Just sign up for a **Free Lifetime Account** and instant access today.

CLICK HERE

ItalianPod101.com
The Fastest, Easiest, and Most Fun Way to Learn Italian

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #1

Greeting Your New Friends with Perfect Italian

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#1

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Ciao, mi chiamo Melissa, e tu?
2. Alessio : Ciao, piacere. Io mi chiamo Alessio.
3. Melissa : Piacere Alessio.
4. Melissa : Buon giorno, mi chiamo Melissa Cox. E lei? Come si chiama?
5. Alessio : Buon giorno. Alessio, Alessio Martini. Piacere di conoscerla.
6. Melissa : Molto lieta.

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : Hi, my name is Melissa, and you?
2. Alessio : Hi, nice to meet you. My name is Alessio.
3. Melissa : Nice to meet you, Alessio.
4. Melissa : Good morning, my name is Melissa Cox. And you, sir? What is your name?
5. Alessio : Good morning. Alessio, Alessio Martini. Nice to meet you.
6. Melissa : Very pleased to meet you.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
Ciao.	Hello, hi, bye.	greeting expression
buon giorno	good morning, good day, good afternoon	greeting expression
e	and	conjunction

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ciao mamma! "Hi, mom!"	Ciao, Laura. "Hello, Laura."
Buon giorno signore. "Hello, sir."	Buon giorno Signor Martini. "Good morning, Mr. Martini."

Buon giorno, Luca. "Good day, Luca."	Io e Anna andiamo a casa. "Anna and I are going home."
E tu? "And you?"	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on Italian Greetings.
Buon giorno. Ciao.
"Good morning. Hi/Hello."

Ciao is the easiest and most common Italian form of greeting: people use it to say "hi," "hello," or "goodbye." We should only use this greeting with people whom we are well acquainted with, such as friends or relatives.

On the other hand, we may use *buon giorno* with anybody, even people we meet for the first time. Literally, *buon giorno* means "good day"; however, we may also interpret it as "good morning" or "good afternoon." As a rule of thumb, we can use *buon giorno* only during daytime-from morning until evening-or from before daybreak to before dusk. If we want to say "good afternoon," we sometimes use *buon pomeriggio*.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #2
You're Not from Italy, Are You?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#2

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Sono di Milano, e tu? Di dove sei?
2. Melissa : Io sono di Miami.
3. Alessio : Ah, non sei di Milano...
4. Alessio : Sono di Milano. Di dove è Lei?
5. Melissa : Io sono di Miami.
6. Alessio : Ah, Lei non è di Milano...

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : I am from Milan, and you? Where are you from?
2. Melissa : I'm from Miami.
3. Alessio : Ah, you're not from Milan.
4. Alessio : I am from Milan. Madame, where are you from?
5. Melissa : I'm from Miami.
6. Alessio : Ah, you're not from Milan.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
tu	you	pronoun	
dove	where	adverb	
Milano	Milan	proper noun	feminine
io	I	pronoun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Tu sei invitato. "You are invited."	Tu sei uno studente? "Are you a student?"
Anche tu? "Even you?"	Dove abiti? Where do you live?

Dove vai domani sera? "Where are you going tomorrow night?"	Dove sei stato? Where have you been?
Dove abiti? Where do you live?	Dove sei? Where are you?
Dove andiamo? Where are we going?	Il Duomo di Milano è l'opera più importante di architettura gotica in Italia. "Milan's Cathedral is the most important work of Gothic architecture in Italy."
Non sono di Milano. "I'm not from Milan."	Io sono di Firenze. "I am from Florence."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Talking about Origins in Italian and the Verb *Essere* ("to be").
Di dove sei?
"Where are you from?"

As we have seen, *di dove sei* is the exact equivalent of "where are you from." It indicates the precise place where one comes from. You should answer either by mentioning your home city or the nearest important city in order to let the listener easily understand.

Di is a stationary preposition that we use with *essere* when talking about a person's birthplace.

Let us now look at the conjugation of the irregular verb *essere* ("to be").

Italian	**"English"**
Io sono	"I am."
Tu sei	"you are."
Lui/lei è	"he/she/it is."
Noi siamo	"we are."
Voi siete	"you are."
Loro sono	"they are."

Since it is irregular, there are no learning tips to make the drilling of this verb easier. The easiest method to memorize it is to do some written verb drills.

Notice that in the dialogue, we translate the expression *di dove sei* as "Where are you from?" but there is no *tu* (Italian for "you"). This is because there is no need to state the subject, as the form *sei* implies "you" in the second singular person pronoun. This is always the way it is in Italian unless we want to stress the person we are referring to.

Let us look again at a very important aspect of the Italian language regarding formal speech. The informal way to ask "Where are you from?" uses the second person singular, *tu*. However, when we wish to use formal speech, we just have to switch to the next person, the third person singular, *lui/lei*, thus creating a distance between the speakers. So *di dove è* actually means "Where are you from?" in formal speech and "Where is he/she from?" in informal speech.

When negating a statement, we should use the negative particle, "*no*," and *non* + verb. You can also skip the initial "no" and just answer with *non* + verb. For example, *non sono di Milano*.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #3

Of Course You're Doing Well If You're in Italy!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#3

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Ciao Ilaria, come stai?
2. Ilaria : Benone, e tu?
3. Alessio : Non c'è male, grazie.
4. Alessio : Buona sera, signora Ravazzi. Come sta?
5. Ilaria : Molto bene, grazie. E lei?
6. Alessio : Mmm. Io sto così così.

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Hi, Ilaria, how are you?
2. Ilaria : Terrific, and you?
3. Alessio : Not too bad, thank you.
4. Alessio : Good evening, Mrs. Ravazzi. How do you do?
5. Ilaria : Very well, thank you. And you?
6. Alessio : Mmm. I'm not so well.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
buona sera	good evening	greeting expression	
Signora	madam, lady, Mrs.	noun	feminine
benone	very well, terrific	adverb	
grazie	thank you, thanks	exclamation	
come	how	interrogative adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Buona sera Signor Martini. "Good evening, Mr. Martini."	Buona sera, Giovanni. "Good evening, Giovanni."

Buon giorno signora. "Hello, madam."	Come si chiama signora? "What's your name, madam?"
Sto benone. "I'm very well."	Grazie mille. "Thank you very much."
Come stai oggi? "How are you today?"	Come ti chiami? What is your name?

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Asking How Someone Is in Italian!
Come stai? Come sta?
"How are you?"

Come stai? means "How are you?" referring to the second person singular "you," (*tu*). We use *come sta?* in formal speech, such as "How are you, sir?" This term actually has two meanings. In order to explain it better, let us look at the present indicative tense of first conjugation Italian verbs.

The meaning of the verb *stare* depends on the context we use it in. Here are a few of the most common: "to be," "to stand," "to stay," "to lie," "to be located," and "to be situated." Note: the direct equivalent of "to be" is *essere*.

Here is the present indicative tense conjugation of *stare.*

Italian	**"English"**
Io sto.	"I am"
Tu stai.	"you are"
Lui/lei sta.	"he/she/it is"
Noi stiamo.	"we are"
Voi state.	"you are"
Loro stanno.	"they are"

As you can clearly see, the informal way to ask "How are you?" uses the second singular person pronoun, *tu*. When we want to use formal speech, we just have to switch to the third singular person, *lui/lei*, thus creating a distance between the speakers. So *come sta* means "How are you?" in formal speech, and "How is he/she?" in informal speech. The same happens for *tu* and *lei* (also written *Lei*).

Lei means either "her" in informal speech or "you" (either masculine and feminine) in formal speech. The context in which we use the word determines its meaning. *Lui* can only mean "him."

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #4
By Chance, You Aren't Italian, Are You?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#4

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Io sono italiano e tu?
2. Melissa : Io non sono italiana, sono americana.
3. Alessio : (rivolto all'amica di Melissa) E tu? Anche tu sei americana?
4. Amica : No, io sono spagnola.
5. Alessio : Io sono italiano, e Lei? Di che nazionalità è?
6. Melissa : Sono americana.
7. Alessio : (rivolto al signore accanto a Melissa) E Lei? E' americano?
8. Amico : No, non sono americano. Sono francese.

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : I am Italian, and you?
2. Melissa : I'm not Italian, I'm American.
3. Alessio : (talking to Melissa's friend) And you? Are you also American?
4. Friend : No, I'm Spanish.
5. Alessio : I am Italian, and you? What nationality are you, madame?
6. Melissa : I'm American.
7. Alessio : (talking to the man next to Melissa) And you? Are you American, sir?
8. Friend : No, I'm not American. I am French.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
francese	French	noun	masculine
americano	American	noun	masculine
nazionalità	nationality	noun	feminine
spagnolo	Spanish	noun	masculine
italiano	Italian	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Mi piace il pane francese. "I like French bread."	Sono francese. "I am French."
La mia amica è americana. "My friend is American."	Mike è americano. "Mike is American."
nazionalità doppia dual nationality	Di che nazionalità sei? What's your nationality?
Conosco molte persone di diverse nazionalità. "I know many people of different nationalities."	Di che nazionalità è Alessio? "What nationality is Alessio?"
Di che nazionalità sei, Marco? "What nationality are you, Marco?"	Mia madre è spagnola. "My mother is Spanish."
Lara è spagnola. "Lara is Spanish."	Sono spagnolo. "I am Spanish."
Io sono italiano. "I am Italian."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Asking about Nationality in Italian.
Ciao, sei francese?
"Hello, are you French?"

In the dialogue, we see how to ask about someone's nationality. The construction of *è americano?* is the same as "are you American?" with two exceptions. First, as we saw in the previous lesson, there is no *lei* (Italian for "you" in formal situations), because there is no need to state the subject since *è* can only indicate *lei* (or *lui*, but not in this context). Second, when expressing nationalities, Italians do not use capital letters. Therefore, we can write *americano*, but not *Americano*, which would mean "the American (guy)," becoming an independent noun.

Italian does not use capitals as often as English does. Please remember the following rules:

1. Begin proper names (*Luca*, *Laura*), town names (*Milano*, *Roma*), countries, lakes, rivers, and the like with a capital letter.
2. In headings or titles, only the first word has a capital letter, and the rest of the title is in lowercase. For example, *Il signore degli anelli* ("The Lord of the Rings.")
3. Days of the week, seasons, and months always begin with a lowercase letter.

4. You should always begin words such as "English," "Italian," and "Japanese" (always in uppercase in English) with a lowercase letter in Italian: *inglese, italiano, giapponese.*

In future lessons, we shall see Italian adjectives in more detail. For now, please remember two points:

1. Italian adjectives can have feminine, masculine, singular, or plural meanings. You will realize the difference by changing the ending.
2. In the case of adjectives of nationality, there are only two types: one that follows both gender and number, and one that only follows number.

Italian Adjectives

Gender and Number	*Italian*	*French*
Masculine singular	*italiano*	*francese*
Feminine singular	*italiana*	*francese*
Masculine plural	*italiani*	*francesi*
Feminine plural	*italiane*	*francesi*

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #5

I Can't Believe You Just Asked How Old She Is in Italian!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#5

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Melissa, quanti anni hai?
2. Melissa : Ho ventiquattro anni. E tu?
3. Alessio : Io ho venticinque anni.
4. Alessio : Quanti anni ha?
5. Melissa : Ho ventiquattro anni e Lei?
6. Alessio : Ho venticinque anni.

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Melissa, how old are you?
2. Melissa : I'm twenty-four; and you?
3. Alessio : I'm twenty-five.
4. Alessio : How old are you, Madame?
5. Melissa : I am twenty-four years old, and you, sir?
6. Alessio : I am twenty-five years old.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
quanti	how many	adjective, plural	
anno	year	noun	masculine
avere	to have	verb	
ventiquattro	twenty-four	cardinal number	
venticinque	twenty-five	cardinal number	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Quanti anni hanno?	Quanti pantaloni hai?
"How old are they?"	"How many trousers do you have?"

Quanti anni avete? "How old are you?"	anno bisestile leap year
un anno solare one calendar year	un anno one year
Quanti anni hai? "How old are you?"	Loro hanno trentadue anni. "They are thirty-two years old."
Fra un anno sarò sicuramente sposato. "In one year's time, I'll definitely be married."	L'anno prossimo. "Next year."
Io ho vent'anni. "I'm twenty years old."	Ho un gatto nero. "I have a black cat."
Hai venti anni? "Are you twenty years old?"	Lei ha ventiquattro anni. "She is twenty-four years old."
Tu hai venticinque anni. "You are twenty-five years old."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Using the Verb *Avere* to Discuss Age in Italian
Quanti anni hai?
"How old are you?"

If we break down the phrase *quanti anni hai*, we can read it in English as "how many years do you have?" In English, we use the verb "to be" when indicating age, while in Italian we use *avere* ("to have").

Let's look at *avere's* conjugation:

Italian	**"English"**
io ho	"I have"
tu hai	"you have"
lui/lei ha	"he/she/it has"
noi abbiamo	"we have"
voi avete	"you have"
loro hanno	"they have"

So you could literally translate the first dialogue as:

Italian	**"English"**
Quanti anni hai?	"How many years do you have?"
Ho ventiquattro anni. E tu?	"I have twenty-four years; and you?"
Ho venticinque anni.	"I have twenty-five years."

Please remember this difference between Italian and English when referring to someone's age.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #6

Would You Describe Me As Clumsy in Italian?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#6

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Ciao Melissa. Hai una bicicletta nuova?
2. Melissa : Sì, è nuova.
3. Alessio : È comoda?
4. Melissa : Sì, sì, grazie. Oggi ho anche le scarpe nuove!
5. Alessio : Le scarpe sono molto carine.
6. Melissa : Sì ma, non sono comode!

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Hi Melissa. Have you got a new bicycle?
2. Melissa : Yes, it's new.
3. Alessio : Is it comfortable?
4. Melissa : Yes, yes, thank you. Today I also have new shoes!
5. Alessio : Those shoes are very cute.
6. Melissa : Yes, but they're not comfortable!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
bicicletta	bicycle	noun	feminine
anche	too, also, as well	conjunction	
oggi	today	noun	masculine
nuovo	new	adjective	
carino	cute, pretty	adjective	
comodo	comfortable, convenient, easy, useful	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La bicicletta è un modo conveniente per andare in giro in città. The bicycle is a convenient way to get around the city.	gomma di bicicletta bicycle tire
L'uomo e il ragazzo stanno andando in bicicletta nel parco nel fine settimana. The man and the boy are riding bicycles in the park on the weekend.	mountain bike mountain bike
Questa bicicletta è molto scomoda. "This bicycle is very uncomfortable."	I ladri hanno rubato una bicicletta. "Thieves have stolen a bicycle."
Anche tu vieni al concerto? "Are you also coming to the concert?"	Anche a te piace la pasta? "Do you also like pasta?"
Viene anche Luigi. "Luigi comes too."	Oggi alle sei e quindici. today at 6:15
Oggi è sabato 10 settembre. Today is Saturday, September 10th.	Oggi è stata una giornata d'estate straordinariamente calda. "Today was an extraordinarily hot summer day."
La sfilata è oggi. "The parade is today."	Oggi mi sento bene. "Today I feel good."
Oggi non vado a scuola. "Today, I'm not going to school."	Oggi devo andare dal dentista. "Today, I have to go to the dentist."
Oh, hai una macchina nuova! "Oh, you got a new car!"	Non è facile continuare a creare nuove idee. "It's not so easy to keep creating new ideas."
Ho perso il mio nuovo cellulare. "I lost my new mobile."	Ho un appartamento nuovo al quinto piano. "I have a new apartment at the fifth floor."
Hai visto la nuova puntata di "Friends"? "Have you watched the new episode of 'Friends?'"	Ooh, quel bambino è così carino. "Aww, that child is so pretty."
E' una ragazza molto carina. "She's a very cute girl."	Ho visto un vestito molto carino, voglio comprarlo! "I saw a very cute dress. I want to buy it."
Il mio letto nuovo è molto comodo. "My new bed is very comfortable."	Questo divano è molto comodo. "This sofa is very comfortable."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Gender and Number of Italian Nouns and Adjectives.
Hai una bicicletta nuova?
"Have you got a new bicycle?"

Italian nouns have both gender (feminine and masculine) and number (singular and plural).

In the dialogue, we see *scarpe* ("shoes"); its singular form is *scarpa* ("shoe"). Because it ends in *-a*, it is a feminine noun.

Please take a look at the following table, which shows how to classify Italian nouns by gender according to the ending vowel of their singular form.

Ending	Gender	Examples	Notes
-o	The majority of the nouns are masculine.	*anno* - "year," *tavolo* - "table," *libro* - "book"	Some nouns are feminine, such as *mano* - "hand"
-a	The majority of the nouns are feminine.	*bicicletta* - "bicycle," *giacca* - "jacket," *tazza* - "cup"	Some nouns are masculine, such as *tema* - "theme"
-e	About half of these nouns are masculine and half are feminine.	**Masculine examples:** *pallone* - "soccer ball," *dente* - "tooth," *bicchiere* - "glass" **Feminine examples:** *televisione* - "television," *voce* - "voice," *patente* - "license"	

In their plural form, Italian nouns change their ending following the rules below:

Rule 1: Singular *-o* changes to plural *-i* for both genders.

For Example:

Gender	*Italian*	"English"
Masculine	*anni*	"years"
Masculine	*tavoli*	"tables"
Masculine	*libri*	"books"
Feminine	*mani*	"hands"

Rule 2: Singular *-a* changes to plural *-i* for masculine nouns and *-e* for feminine nouns.

For Example:

Gender	*Italian*	"English"
Masculine plural: *-i*	*temi*	"themes"
Feminine plural: *-e*	*biciclette*	"bicycles"
Feminine plural: *-e*	*giacche*	"jackets"
Feminine plural: *-e*	*tazze*	"cups"

Rule 3: Singular *-e* becomes plural *-i* for both genders.

Gender	*Italian*	"English"
Masculine	*palloni*	"soccer balls"
Masculine	*denti*	"teeth"
Masculine	*bicchieri*	"glasses"
Feminine	*televisioni*	"televisions"
Feminine	*voci*	"voices"
Feminine	*patenti*	"licenses"

So how do Italians know the difference between masculine and feminine nouns? Well, certainly by using them every day they know them by heart, but also because the Italian articles help them. We shall see the articles in our next lessons.

Notes

Because Italian nouns have gender and number, adjectives must also have these attributes. This is because they follow nouns. In the dialogue, we see *scarpe nuove*, where the adjective *nuovo* changes to its feminine plural form to match *scarpa* in its plural form, *scarpe*.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #7
Italian Sandwiches Free to a Good Home

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

7

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Mmmm, buono!
2. Alessio : Sì, i panini del bar di fronte sono molto buoni.
3. Melissa : Eh sì. Il mio ha le olive, il tonno e i pomodori. E tu che panino hai?
4. Alessio : Il mio panino invece ha il prosciutto, la mozzarella e le melanzane.

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : Mmmm, good!
2. Alessio : Yes, the sandwiches of the bar in front of here are very good.
3. Melissa : Oh yes. Mine has olives, tuna, and tomatoes. And you, which sandwich do you have?
4. Alessio : My sandwich has ham, mozzarella cheese, and eggplant instead.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
pomodoro	tomato	noun	masculine
panino	sandwich, panino	noun	masculine
molto	very, really	adjective	
invece	instead	adverb	
oliva	olive	noun	
melanzana	eggplant	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Il pomodoro è un frutto o una verdura? Is a tomato a fruit or a vegetable?	I pomodori sono frutta. Tomatoes are fruit.
La pasta al pomodoro è la mia preferita. "Tomato pasta is my favourite."	Mio nonno coltiva i pomodori nel suo giardino. "My grandfather grows tomatoes in his garden."
Il pomodoro è un simbolo della cucina Italiana. "Tomato is a symbol of Italian cuisine."	Questo pomodoro è molto saporito. "This tomato is very tasty."

Mi piacciono molto i panini italiani. "I like Italian sandwiches very much."	Il panino al prosciutto crudo. "The sandwich with Parma Ham."
Mangio un panino. "I eat a sandwich."	Il tuo vestito è molto chic. "Your dress is very chic."
È molto caro. "It's very expensive."	Vorrei fare una passeggiata invece devo lavorare. "I'd like to take a walk, but I have to work instead."
Ho fame. Io invece ho sete. "I'm hungry. Instead, I'm thirsty."	Invece di perdere tempo, lavora! "Work instead of wasting time!"
In Toscana l'olio d'oliva è molto buono. "In Tuscany, olive oil is very good."	La melanzana è di vari colori compreso viola, bianco e verde. Eggplant comes in various colors including purple, white and green.
melanzana fritta fried eggplant	Le melanzane italiane sono rotonde e grosse. "Italian eggplants are round and big."
Le melazane sulla pizza sono molto buone. "Eggplants on a pizza are very good."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Plural Definite Articles.
I panini del bar di fronte sono molto buoni!
"The sandwiches of the bar in front of here are very good."

Definite articles correspond to the English counterpart "the." Today we shall see the plural form of these articles.

Plural Definite Articles (see rules below):

Construction (Before Nouns Starting with...)	Masculine	Feminine
Before consonant	*i ragazzi*	*le camicie*
Before vowel	*gli unicorni*	*le unghie*
Before *-z*, *-y*, or *-s* + consonant	*gli zerbini, gli scoiattoli*	*le zanzare, le scale*

Rule 1: Use *i* before masculine nouns starting with a consonant.

For Example:

1. *i ragazzi*
   "the boys"

Rule 2: Use *gli* before masculine nouns starting with...

Construction (Before nouns starting with...)	***Italian***	**"English"**
a vowel	*gli unicorni*	"the unicorns"
-z	*gli zerbini*	"the doormats"
-s + consonant	*gli scoiattoli*	"the squirrels"

Rule 3: Use *le* for every feminine noun, regardless of the starting letter.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
le camicie	"the shirts"
le unghie	"the fingernails"
le zanzare	"the mosquitoes"
le scale	"the stairs"

One difference between the Italian and English languages is that in Italian, we often employ "substantive adjectives," which are adjectives we use as stand-alone nouns. We normally use substantive adjectives when we take one quality of the subject and elect it to be a temporary or permanent synonym of the subject (which can be both an animate or inanimate object) we refer to. For example, assume we have a group of five people and only one of them has blond hair. We could say *il biondo* ("the blond one") since the context clarifies we can identify just one person.

As we explained in the previous lesson, these adjectives follow all the grammatical rules concerning nouns, thus they can be masculine or feminine, singular or plural; articles can precede them; and so on.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #8

How Much Does That Italian Accessory Cost?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#8

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Mi scusi, quanto costa questa cintura?
2. Commesso : Costa venticinque euro.
3. Melissa : E quanto costano questi occhiali da sole? Sono così carini!
4. Commesso : Gli occhiali costano centoventi euro.
5. Melissa : Ah, la ringrazio. Compro solo la cintura.

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : Excuse me, how much does this belt cost?
2. Clerk : It costs twenty-five euros.
3. Melissa : And how much do these sunglasses cost? They're so cute!
4. Clerk : The sunglasses cost one hundred and twenty euros.
5. Melissa : Ah, thank you. I'll buy only the belt.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
costare	to cost	verb	
solo	only	adverb	
questa	this (feminine singular)	demonstrative adjective	feminine
comprare	to buy, to purchase	verb	
cintura	belt	noun	feminine
occhiali da sole	sunglasses	phrase	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Questo libro costa dodici euro. "This book costs twelve euros."	Questi stivali costano duecento euro. "These boots cost two hundred euros."
La giacca costa cento euro. "The jacket costs one hundred euros."	Quanto costa quello? "How much is that?"

Questa maglia costa solo cinque euro. "This shirt costs only five euros."	Solo tre euro. "Only three euros."
Questa sera. "This evening."	Questa casa è grande. "This house is big."
Questa è la mia borsa. "This is my bag."	Comprerà una casa di fianco al fiume per il suo cane. "He will buy a house next to the river for his dog."
Compro sempre troppo cibo, quando ho fame. "I always buy too many groceries when I am hungry."	Vorrei comprare questo anello per la mia ragazza. "I'd like to buy this ring for my girlfriend."
Ho comprato della verdura e della carne per la cena di stasera. "I bought some vegetables and some meat for tonight's dinner."	Tu compri il pane. "You buy the bread."
cintura di pelle marrone brown leather belt	cintura di pelle leather belt
pantaloni e cintura pants and belt	Io non uso mai la cintura. "I never use the belt."
Si prega di allacciare le cinture di sicurezza. "Please fasten your seat belts."	A Firenze puoi trovare delle belle cinture di pelle. "In Florence, you can find some good leather belts."
Non trovo la mia cintura preferita. "I can't find my favorite belt."	Indosso occhiali da sole colorati e alla moda. "I wear colorful fashionable sunglasses."
Questi occhiali da sole sono nuovi. "These sunglasses are new."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Asking the Price of Goods and the Conjugation at the Present Indicative of Verbs Ending in -are.
Quanto costa questa cintura?/Compro solo la cintura.
"How much does this belt cost?"/"I'll buy only the belt."

The verb *costare* ("to cost") works in Italian exactly like its English equivalent. We conjugate it according to the gender and number of the noun it refers to.

To conjugate the verb at the *presente indicativo* tense, first take the infinitive (for example, *comprare*), then drop the ending *-are*, leaving you with *compr-,* and finally add the appropriate endings. The endings are different for each person.

The following scheme is the conjugation of the verb *comprare*, "to buy," at the *presente indicativo* tense. We underlined the endings for each person, which we use with all verbs, both regular and irregular.

Italian	**"English"**
*io còmpr-**o***	"I buy"
*tu còmpr-**i***	"you buy"
*lui/lei còmpr-**a***	"he/she buys"
*noi compr-**iàmo****	"we buy""
*voi compr-**àte****	"you buy"
*loro còmpr-**ano***	"they buy"

Here is a short list of some additional first conjugation verbs.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
abitare	"to live"
amare	"to love"
arrivare	"to arrive"
ascoltare	"to listen to"
ballare	"to dance"
cantare	"to sing"

*An important element of verbs is stress. The stress in both singular forms and the third person plural is on the vowel of the verb's stem, while the stress of the first and second plural person is on the theme vowel (in this case, -***a-***), just as it is in the infinitive.

Please note that in Italian, only vowels at the end of a word can have a written accent mark: this indicates that the stress is on the word-ending vowel. We use it in the scheme above just to clarify the stress of the word.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #9
If It's Made in Italy, It's Gotta Be Good!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#9

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Cosa leggi?
2. Melissa : Leggo l'etichetta di questa maglia.
3. Alessio : Perché?
4. Melissa : Perché per me è importante sapere se è fatta in Italia.
5. Alessio : Ah, è vero. Hai ragione!

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : What are you reading?
2. Melissa : I'm reading the label of this shirt.
3. Alessio : Why?
4. Melissa : Because for me it's important to know whether it is made in Italy.
5. Alessio : Ah, that's true. You're right!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
sapere	to know	verb	
perché	why	adverb	
leggere	to read	verb	
etichetta	label	noun	feminine
maglia	shirt	noun	
importante	important	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Lo so, lo so, so di essere in ritardo... "I know, I know, I know I'm late..."	Non lo so. "I don't know."
Sai che ore sono? "Do you know what time it is?"	Sai come prenotare un biglietto per il treno? "Do you know how to book a train ticket?"

Sai dove andare? "Do you know where to go?"	Non so niente. "I don't know anything."
Perché è di cattivo umore oggi? Why is he in a bad mood today?	Perché no? Why not?
Dimmi perché stai andando Tell me why you are going.	Perché sarai in ritardo? Why will you be late?
Perché me? Why me?	Perché ridi? Perché sei divertente. "Why are you laughing? Because you're funny."
Perché sei felice? "Why are you happy?"	Mi piace leggere il giornale. “I like reading the newspaper.”
Leggo il giornale in biblioteca. "I read the newspaper in the library."	Leggo la sera prima di dormire. "I read in the evening before going to sleep."
Leggo il giornale. "I'm reading the newspaper."	L'etichetta è bianca o nera. "The label is either white or black."
Questa maglia è vecchia e sporca. "This shirt is old and dirty."	informazione importante important information
cosa più importante most important thing	La colazione è il pasto più importante della giornata. Breakfast is the most important meal of the day.
Per me tu sei importante. "You're important to me."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is on the Present Indicative Tense of Verbs Ending in -ere.
Cosa leggi?
"What are you reading?"

To conjugate *-ere* verbs at the *presente indicativo* tense, we have to follow the same process as with *-are* verbs. That is, you take the infinitive form of the verb (for example, *leggere)*, then drop the ending *-ere*, leaving you with *legg-*, and finally add the appropriate endings. The endings differ according to the person they refer to.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
*Io lègg-**o.***	"I read."
*Tu lègg-**i.***	"you read."
*Lui/lei lègg-**e.***	"he/she reads."
*Noi legg-**iàmo!****	"we read."
*Voi legg-**éte.****	"you read."
*Loro lègg-**ono.***	"they read."

In the conjugation of the verb *leggere,* please note the alternation between the soft and hard *g*. This happens because *g* before the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u* has a sound like the *g* in "good"; when *g* appears before *e* and *i*, it sounds like the *g* in "general."

Some other *-ere* verbs conjugated like *leggere* include the following:

Italian	**"English"**
chiudere	"to close"
spendere	"to spend"
scrivere	"to write"
ricevere	"to receive"

It is important to notice that a considerable number of verbs belonging to the second conjugation (*-ere* verbs) are irregular. This means that they do not follow the standard rules. They can either change the stem or the ending, but rarely both.

*Some *-ere* verbs, like *lèggere,* have the stress on the first "*e*" of the infinitive but some others have the stress on the second syllable.

For instance, take the verb *vedére*. For this verb, the stress changes. When in doubt, check a dictionary to see where the stress is.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #10
How to Pass the Time in Italy

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Italian
  Main
  English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences
Grammar

#10

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Che bella gioielleria! A che ora apre?
2. Alessio : Mmm. Alle undici, sono le dieci e trenta. Perché non beviamo un caffè mentre aspettiamo?
3. Melissa : D'accordo! Buona idea, comunque io oggi preferisco un tè.
4. Alessio : Come preferisci, andiamo al bar!

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : What a beautiful jewelry store! At what time does it open?
2. Alessio : Mmm. At eleven; it's ten-thirty. Why don't we drink a cup of coffee while we're waiting?
3. Melissa : Okay! Good idea; however, today I prefer a cup of tea.
4. Alessio : As you prefer, let's go to the bar!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
aprire	to open	noun	
preferire	to prefer	verb	
mentre	while, whilst	conjunction	
aspettare	to wait	noun	
idea	idea, thought	noun	feminine
gioielleria	jewelry store (jewellery store)	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

E' Natale, apriamo i regali! "It's Christmas, let's open the presents!"	Fa troppo caldo, apri la finestra? "It's too hot. Can you open the window?"
Devo aprire il negozio alle otto del mattino. "I have to open the store at 8:00 o'clock a.m."	Preferisco bere acqua. "I prefer drinking water."
Io preferisco il verde. "I prefer green."	Preferisci il vino o la birra? "Do you prefer wine or beer?"

Io preferisco viaggiare che lavorare. "I prefer traveling to working."	Guarda avanti mentre cammini. "Look in front of you while you're walking."
Mentre tornavo ho incontrato Matteo. "I met Matteo while I was going back."	Ascolto musica mentre viaggio in treno. "I listen to music while I travel by train."
Non aspettarmi! "Do not wait for me!"	Odio aspettarti per ore! "I hate waiting for you for hours!"
Aspettami! "Wait for me!"	Aspetta un attimo! "Wait a moment!"
Ho aspettato fino all'una, ma non è venuto. "I waited until one, but he didn't show up."	Sono in ritardo, mi aspetti? "I'm late; would you wait for me?"
Che idea brillante! "What a brilliant idea!"	Hai avuto un'ottima idea! "You had a great idea!"
Questa gioielleria è molto cara. "This jewelry store is very expensive."	Oggi vado in gioielleria perché devo comprare un regalo a un'amica. "Today I am going to the jewelry store because I have to buy a present for a friend."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Present Indicative of Verbs Ending in -ire.
A che ora apre?
"At what time does it open?"

The *presente indicativo* of third conjugation verbs follows the same patterns employed for the two conjugations we previously analyzed. That is, you take the infinitive of the verb (for example, *aprire)*, then drop the ending *-ire*, leaving you with *apr-*, and finally, add the appropriate endings. The endings differ according to the person they refer to.

Let's take the regular verb *aprire,* meaning "to open."
Presente Indicativo

Italian	"English"
*io àpr-**o***	"I open"
*tu àpr-**i***	"you open"
*lui/lei àpr-**e***	"he/she/it opens"
*noi apr-**iàmo****	"we open"
*voi apr-**ìte****	"you open"
*loro àpr-**ono***	"they open"

*The considerations regarding the pronunciation of the first and the second plural persons fully apply to the third one.

Additional Italian verbs that follow the conjugation above include the following:

Italian	"English"
partire	"to leave"
offrire	"to offer"
sentire	"to hear"/"to listen to"
dormire	"to sleep"

Moreover, a significant number of the third conjugation's regular verbs add the interfix (which is a group of letters inserted between the stem and the ending) -*isc* in all the six persons, except the first and second plural persons. In all the remaining cases, they follow the standard conjugation.

Let's look at the conjugation of the verb *preferire,* meaning "to prefer."

Presente Indicativo

Italian	"English"
*io prefer-**ìsc**-o**	"I prefer"
*tu prefer-**ìsc**-i*	"you prefer"
*lui/lei prefer-**ìsc**-e*	"he/she prefers"
noi prefer-iàmo	"we prefer"
voi prefer-ìte	"you prefer"
*loro prefer-**ìsc**-ono*	"they prefer"

Please note that this form applies exclusively to the present indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative.

As far as grammar is concerned, there is no general rule to distinguish the verbs that need the interfix -*isc*- from those that follow the standard conjugation. The most efficient method to figure it out is to consult a good dictionary and use them right away!

Finally, the following table shows some of the most widely used third conjugation irregular verbs:

For Example:

Italian	"English"
uscire	"to go out," "to exit"
venire	"to come"
morire	"to die," "to pass away"
udire	"to hear"
divenire	"to become"
mentire	"to lie"
salire	"to go upward," "to climb"

* Please note that the considerations regarding the pronunciation of the first and the second plural persons fully apply to the third one, except with verbs requiring the *-isc-* interfix. In that case, the stress is on the second to last syllable. For instance, *preferire* becomes *io preferìsco*.

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #11

Could Anything Be Better Than THIS Italian Lesson!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#11

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Alessio, questa collana luccica molto vero?
2. Alessio : Sì, forse troppo, preferisco questa collana con quest'ametista.
3. Melissa : Ma no! Troppo vistosa!
4. Alessio : Allora questo braccialetto com'è?
5. Melissa : Insomma... Alessio, hai un gusto proprio particolare.

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : Alessio, this necklace sparkles a lot, doesn't it?
2. Alessio : Yes, probably too much; I prefer this necklace with this amethyst.
3. Melissa : Oh no, it's too showy!
4. Alessio : So, what is this bracelet like?
5. Melissa : Well...Alessio, you do have a really particular taste.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
particolare	particular, peculiar	adjective	
collana	necklace	noun	feminine
luccicare	to sparkle, glint, shimmer	verb	
ametista	amethyst	noun	
vistoso	showy	adjective	
braccialetto	bracelet	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Un punto di vista particolare. "A particular point of view."	È una storia molto particolare. "It's a very peculiar story."

La collana che stai indossando ha delle belle gemme. The necklace you are wearing has beautiful gems.	collana d'oro gold necklace
collana di perle pearl necklace	Quanto costa quella collana di diamanti? "How much is that diamond necklace?"
Ho una collana di Bulgari. "I've got a Bulgari necklace."	I tuoi occhi luccicano. "Your eyes are sparkling."
L'ametista è una pietra viola. "The amethyst is a purple stone."	Questo vestito è molto vistoso. "This dress is very showy."
Mia madre ha un braccialetto con zaffiri. "My mother has a bracelet with sapphires."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Demonstrative Adjective *questo* ("this") and Its Singular Forms.
Preferisco questa collana con quest'ametista.
"I prefer this necklace with this amethyst."

In today's lesson, we shall learn how to use the Italian adjective *questo*, meaning "this." Like every Italian adjective, it has to agree with the noun it refers to in both gender and number, and it cannot stand-alone (in some occurrences, we could also use *questo* as a pronoun, but we will discuss this in the advanced courses). Today, we shall see the singular forms (both masculine and feminine) of the demonstrative adjective *questo*, whose English equivalent is "this."

Construction	Masculine singular	Feminine singular
Before consonant	***questo*** *tavolo*	***questa*** *collana*
Before vowel	***questo*** *anello*	***quest'****ametista*
Before *-z*, *-y*, or *-s* + consonant	***questo*** *zaino* ***questo*** *yogurt* ***questo*** *studente*	***questa*** *scarpa*

Use *questo* before masculine nouns starting with a consonant; starting with a vowel; starting with *-z*, *-y*, or *-s* + a consonant; and finally with rare nouns starting with *gn-*, like *gnomo* ("dwarf").

For Example:

Italian	"English"
questo tavolo	"this table"
questo anello	"this ring"
questo zaino	"this rucksack"
questo yogurt	"this yogurt"
questo studente	"this student"
questo gnomo	"this dwarf"

Use *questa* before feminine nouns starting with a consonant or starting with *-z*, *-y*, or *-s* + a consonant; use *quest'* before feminine nouns starting with a vowel.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
questa collana	"this necklace"
questa scarpa	"this shoe"
quest' ametista	"this amethyst"

Although you always need to use *quest'* with a feminine noun starting with a vowel, in the case of masculine nouns starting with a vowel, we can use either *quest'* or *questo*.

For Example:

1. *questo alunno*
   "this pupil"

We can use this category of adjectives to refer to three different dimensions of the discourse: space, time, and ideas (the latter includes other discourses). When used in spatial and temporal terms, it works exactly like its English equivalent ("this") and refers to something "close" to the speaker or the writer.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
questo libro	"this book"
quest'estate	"this summer"
quest'angoscia	"this angst"

However, when we mention ideas and past discourses (both spoken and written), in Italian we often use *questo* ("this") or *questi* ("these") rather than *quello* ("that") or *quelli* ("those").

For example, when we want to explain "the reason why" in English we often use the phrase "that's why...", but in Italian, we should use "questo perchè...."

This is due to the different unconscious perception of reality in Italian and English. In English, we feel ideas and past discourses as distant from the subject, while in Italian, we more often personify them and render them close to the speaker (or writer).

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #12

Why Don't We Do This, THAT, and the Other in Italy!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#12

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Mamma mia, muoio di fame!
2. Alessio : Eh sì, è già ora di pranzo.
3. Melissa : Dove andiamo a mangiare?
4. Alessio : Perchè non andiamo in quel ristorante in Via De' Neri?
5. Melissa : Oh no, andiamo in quella pizzeria!
6. Alessio : Ma non vedi quante persone aspettano fuori?
7. Melissa : Sì, quindi la pizza là è sicuramente deliziosa. Proviamo!
8. Alessio : D'accordo.

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : My goodness, I'm starving!
2. Alessio : Oh yes, it's already lunch time.
3. Melissa : Where can we go eat?
4. Alessio : Why don't we go to that restaurant on De' Neri Street?
5. Melissa : Oh no, let's go to that pizzeria!
6. Alessio : Don't you see how many people are waiting outside?
7. Melissa : Yes, so pizza is definitely delicious there. Let's try!
8. Alessio : Okay.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
ora	time, hour	noun	feminine
pranzo	lunch	noun	masculine
provare	to try, try on, try out	verb	
sicuramente	definitely, surely, certainly	adverb	
delizioso	delightful, delicious	adjective	
fuori	out, outside	adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Che ora è? "What time is it?"	A che ora è il tuo spettacolo? "What time is your play?"
E' ora di andare a letto. "It's time to go to bed."	A che ora arrivi? "What time will you arrive?"
Un pranzo abbondante vi farà venire sonno nel pomeriggio. A big lunch will make you sleepy in the afternoon.	Cosa mangerai a pranzo? What will you eat for lunch?
La donna è interessata alla storia. The woman is interested in the story.	essere interessati ad una storia. interested in a story
pranzare eat lunch	Il pranzo è il pasto più importante. The lunch is the most important meal.
Oggi per pranzo mangio un gelato. "Today I eat an ice cream for lunch."	Ti invito a pranzo. "I invite you for lunch."
Non mi piace provare i vestiti. "I don't like to try on clothes."	Ho provato a fare quello che mi hai detto. "I tried to do what you said to me."
Proviamo quel nuovo ristorante? "Shall we try that new restaurant?"	Posso provare questi pantaloni? "Can I try on these pants?"
Uso sicuramente quel cappotto in inverno. "I definitely use that coat in winter."	Sicuramente verrò alla tua festa. "I will definitely come to your party."
La torta al cioccolato è deliziosa. "Chocolate cake is pretty delicious."	I primi piatti in questo ristorante sono deliziosi. "In this restaurant, first courses are delicious."
Questa torta è deliziosa. "This cake is delicious."	Oggi fuori è molto freddo. "Today it's very cold outside."
Francesca abita fuori città. "Francesca lives out of the city."	È meglio tenere la spazzatura fuori casa. "It is better to keep the garbage out of the house."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Singular Forms of the Adjective Quello ("that").
Perché non andiamo in quel ristorante?/Andiamo in quella pizzeria.
"Why don't we go to that restaurant?"/"Let's go to that pizzeria."

In today's lesson, we shall learn how to use the singular forms of the demonstrative adjective *quel* ("that"). *Quel* refers to things that are far from the speaker.

This adjective precedes the noun and we modify it according to the same pattern as the definite articles. For example, *la piscina* ("the swimming pool") implies the usage of the adjective *quella*, as in *quella piscina* ("that swimming pool") because we use *la* before a feminine noun starting with a consonant.

The table below explains clearly how we should modify *quel*.

Construction	Masculine singular	Feminine singular
Before vowels	***quell'****osso*	***quell'****università*
Before consonants	***quel*** *teatro*	***quella*** *casa*
Before *y-*, *z-*, *x-*, *ps-*, *gn-*, and *s-* + a consonant	***quello*** *specchio*	***quella*** *stanza*

We use the adjective *quell'* before a singular feminine or masculine noun starting with a vowel.

For Example:

1. *quell'osso*
   "that bone"
2. *quell' università*
   "that university"

Quella precedes any singular feminine noun starting with a consonant.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
quella stanza	"that room"
quella biblioteca	"that library"
quella forchetta	"that fork"

We use *quel* before a masculine singular noun starting with a consonant.

For Example:

1. *quel teatro*
   "that theater"
2. *quel mestiere*
   "that job"

Finally, the adjective *quello* always precedes a masculine singular noun starting with *y-*, *z-*, *x-*, *ps-*, *gn-* or *s-* + a consonant.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
quello specchio	"that mirror"
quello yogurt	"that yogurt"
quello scandalo	"that scandal"
quello psicopatico	"that psychopath"

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #13
How Can You Be on a Diet in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#13

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Finalmente un tavolo per noi!
2. Melissa : Eh sì, ordiniamo o no?
3. Alessio : Questi prezzi non sono così male.
4. Melissa : E queste pizze sembrano tutte buonissime. Tu cosa prendi?
5. Alessio : Io prendo una semplice marinara.
6. Melissa : Ah no, io prendo questa pizza con i capperi, le olive, i funghi, il prosciutto, la rucola...
7. Alessio : Hey Melissa, tu non sei a dieta eh?
8. Melissa : Come?!
9. Alessio : Ah ah ah!

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Finally a table for us!
2. Melissa : Oh yes, do we order or not?
3. Alessio : These prices are not so bad.
4. Melissa : And all these pizzas look very good. What do you take?
5. Alessio : I take a simple marinara.
6. Melissa : Oh no, I take this pizza with capers, olives, mushrooms, ham, rocket.....
7. Alessio : Hey Melissa, you're not on a diet, eh?
8. Melissa : What?!
9. Alessio : Ha ha ha.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
prosciutto	ham	noun	
sembrare	to seem, look, look like	verb	
ordinare	to order	verb	
finalmente	at last, finally	adverb	
cappero	caper	noun	
dieta	diet	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La pizza prosciutto e funghi è molto comune. "Ham and mushroom pizza is very popular."	Il prosciutto è buono. "Prosciutto is good."
Il prosciutto cotto è buono. "Ham is good."	Questa borsa sembra carissima. "This bag looks very expensive."
Le cose non sono sempre come sembrano. "Things are not always what they seem."	Quegli spaghetti sembrano buoni. "That spaghetti looks delicious."
Ho ordinato un caffè anche per te. "I ordered a coffee for you too."	Per favore, non ordinare cose, di cui non hai bisogno "Please don't order stuff that you don't need."
Abbiamo tutti ordinato la stessa cosa al ristorante. "All of us ordered the same at the restaurant."	Possiamo ordinare online? "Can we order online?"
Perché non ordiniamo un espresso? "Why don't we order an espresso?"	Ordiniamo un antipasto? "Shall we order an appetizer?"
Finalmente si mangia! "Finally, we eat!"	Finalmente siamo arrivati a casa! "We came back home at last!"
I capperi vengono mangiati durante l'aperitivo. "Capers are eaten during the happy hour."	Devo cominciare una dieta. "I have to go on a diet."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Plural Forms of the Demonstrative Adjective *Questo*.
Questi prezzi non sono così male./Queste pizze sembrano tutte buonissime.
"These prices are not so bad."/"All these pizzas look very good."

Today we are going to learn the plural forms of the demonstrative adjective *questo* (previously seen in the eleventh lesson).

Considering that we have to modify adjectives according to the noun they refer to in both gender and number, we are now looking at *questo* in its plural forms, which are *questi* and *queste*, meaning "these."

Construction	Masculine plural	Feminine plural
Before consonant	***questi*** *prezzi*	***queste*** *pizze*
Before vowel	***questi*** *abiti*	***queste*** *acciughe*

Use *questi* before any masculine plural noun starting with either a consonant or a vowel.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
questi prezzi	"these prices"
questi divani	"these sofas"
questi orologi	"these watches"
questi abiti	"these dresses"

Use *queste* before any feminine plural nouns starting with either a consonant or a vowel.

For Example:

1. *queste pizze*
   "these pizzas"
2. *queste acciughe*
   "these anchovies"

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #14
Can You Eat Those Desserts First in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#14

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Cameriere : Ecco le pizze!
2. Alessio : Wow, sono molto grandi!
3. Melissa : Mmm, che profumino! Buon appetito!
4. Alessio : Buon appetito. Hey, quei funghi sembrano proprio freschi.
5. Melissa : Sì, sono porcini. Anche quelle ragazze mangiano la pizza come la mia, vedi?
6. Alessio : Hai ragione. Io oggi invece non ho molta fame, nella mia pizza c'è solo il pomodoro.
7. Melissa : Che buona! Dopo prendiamo un gelato?
8. Alessio : Ma Melissa..., pensi già al dolce?!

ENGLISH

1. Waiter : Here's the pizzas!
2. Alessio : Wow, they're very large!
3. Melissa : Mmm, it smells good! Enjoy your meal!
4. Alessio : Enjoy. Hey, those mushrooms look really fresh.
5. Melissa : Yes, they're porcini mushrooms. Hey, those girls are eating the same pizza as mine, do you see?
6. Alessio : You're right. But today I am not very hungry. In my pizza there's only tomato sauce.
7. Melissa : Mmm, it's so good! Are we having an ice cream later?
8. Alessio : But Melissa, are you already thinking about dessert?!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
fame	hunger	noun	
dolce	dessert	noun	masculine
proprio	really, actually	adverb	
ragazza	girl	noun	
fresco	fresh, cool, chilly	adjective	
profumino	good smell	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Hai fame? Are you hungry?	Oggi non ho molta fame. "Today, I'm not very hungry."
Luca ha fame. "Luca is hungry."	La panna cotta è un dolce italiano. Panna cotta is an Italian dessert.
Ordiniamo il dolce? Do we order the dessert?	Non voglio esagerare mangiando anche il dolce. "I don't want to overdo it by having dessert too."
Un dolce italiano molto famoso è il tiramisù. "A very famous Italian dessert is tiramisu."	Ho preparato il dolce per te! "I prepared the dessert for you!"
Ordiniamo il dolce? "Do we order the dessert?"	Sei proprio sicuro? "Are you really sure?"
Non ti capisco proprio. "I really don't understand you."	Oggi sono proprio contenta. "Today, I'm really happy."
Marina è una ragazza carina. "Marina is a cute girl."	Maria è una ragazza spiritosa. "Maria is a funny girl."
Questo è un formaggio fresco. "This is a fresh cheese."	Mi piace la birra fresca. "I like cool beer."
C'è un profumino d'arrosto. "There's a good smell of roast meat."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Plural Forms of the Demonstrative Adjective *Quello.*
Quei funghi sembrano proprio freschi./Anche quelle ragazze mangiano la pizza.
"Those mushrooms look really fresh."/"Also those girls are eating pizza."

Today, we are looking at the plural forms of the demonstrative adjective *quello* (as seen in previous lessons).

Like with any other adjective, we change its ending when we use it to refer to plural nouns, so *quello* becomes *quei*, *quegli*, and *quelle*.

These adjectives always precede the noun, and we modify them according to the same pattern as the definite articles. For example, *i funghi*, meaning "mushrooms," requires the usage of the adjective *quei*: *quei funghi*, meaning "those mushrooms." This is because we use the article *i* before plural nouns starting with a consonant.

Please follow the scheme in the table below.

Construction	Masculine plural	Feminine plural
Before a consonant	***quei*** *funghi*	***quelle*** *ragazze*
Before *y-*, *z-*, *x-*, *ps-*, *gn-*, and *s-* + a consonant	***quegli*** *stivali*	***quelle*** *scatole*
Before a vowel	***quegli*** *alberghi*	***quelle*** *arance*

Quei always precedes masculine plural nouns starting with a consonant.

For Example:

1. *quei funghi*
   "those mushrooms"
2. *quei pantaloni*
   "those pants"

We use *quegli* before masculine plural nouns starting with *z-*, *x-*, *y-*, *ps-*, *gn-*, or *s-* + a consonant as well as those starting with a vowel.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
quegli stivali	"those boots"
quegli alberghi	"those hotels"
quegli ospedali	"those hospitals"

Finally, please use *quelle* before any feminine plural nouns starting with either a consonant or a vowel.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
quelle ragazze	"those girls"
quelle scatole	"those boxes"
quelle arance	"those oranges"
quelle suore	"those nuns"

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #15
Do You Come to This Italian Place Often?

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Italian
Main
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences
Grammar

#15

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Prendiamo qui il gelato!
2. Melissa : Ah sì, conosco questa gelateria.
3. Alessio : Davvero? In effetti è famosa. Vieni qui spesso?
4. Melissa : No, solo ogni tanto. Quale gusto preferisci?
5. Alessio : Tutti! Vediamo, oggi facciamo un cono grande con pistacchio, amarena e nocciola. E tu?
6. Melissa : Io di solito prendo cioccolata e caffè.
7. Commesso : Grande o piccolo signorina?
8. Melissa : Una coppetta piccola per piacere.

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Let's get ice cream here!
2. Melissa : Oh yes, I know this ice cream shop.
3. Alessio : Really? In fact, it's famous. Do you come here often?
4. Melissa : No, just sometimes. What flavor do you prefer?
5. Alessio : All of them! Let's see, today let's make it a large cone with pistachio, black cherry, and hazelnut. And you?
6. Melissa : I usually take chocolate and coffee.
7. Shopkeeper : Small or large for you, miss?
8. Melissa : A small cup, please.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
piccolo	small, tiny	adjective
cono	cone	noun
nocciola	hazelnut	noun
grande	large, big	adjective
conoscere	to know	verb
spesso	often	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ho un piccolo cane. "I have a small dog."	Troppo grande è meglio che troppo piccolo. "Too big is better than too small."
Questo appartamento è piccolo. "This apartment is small."	Questo chiwawa è proprio piccolo! "This Chihuahua is really small!"
Questo cono gelato è buonissimo. "This ice cream cone is very good."	Gli scoiattoli mangiano tante nocciole. "Squirrels eat a lot of hazelnuts."
La mia mano è grande. "My hand is big."	Ha ordinato una stampa grande di una delle sue foto. "He ordered a large size print of one of his photographs."
La nave più grande che abbia mai visto sta arrivando al porto. "The largest ship I had ever seen was arriving at the port."	Questa stanza è abbastanza grande. "This room is big enough."
Questi pantaloni sono troppo grandi per me. "These pants are too large for me."	Conosci il mio amico Mario? "Do you know my friend Mario?"
Ieri sera ho conosciuto un attore molto importante. "Yesterday evening, I met a very important actor."	Conosci qualche cantante italiano? "Do you know any Italian singers?"
spesso dormire troppo often oversleep	Va spesso in città in bicicletta la domenica. He often goes to town by bicycle on Sunday.
Quanto spesso fai esercizio fisico? How often do you work out?	Lo incontri spesso? Do you meet him often?

Spesso mi addormento tardi. "I often fall asleep late."	Mangio spesso pistacchi mentre guardo la tv. "I often eat pistachios while I'm watching TV."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on Frequency Adverbs.
Vieni quì spesso?/Solo ogni tanto./Di solito prendo cioccolata e caffè.
"Do you come here often?"/"Just sometimes."/"I usually take chocolate and coffee."

To talk about how often something happens, we use the so-called adverbs of frequency. Here are some of the most used frequency adverbs in Italian:

Italian	**"English"**
spesso	"often"
ogni tanto	"sometimes"
a volte	"sometimes"
di solito	"usually"
normalmente	"usually"

When using simple verb forms (that is, one-word verbs), we usually place adverbs after them.

For Example:

1. *Mangio spesso la pizza durante il fine settimana.*
   "I often eat pizza during weekends."
2. *Prendo spesso il treno per andare a lavoro.*
   "I often catch the train to go to work."

With compound verbs (i.e., two-word verbs), we place most adverbs after the past participle, but we can also position them before the verb.

For Example:

1. *Ogni tanto ho fatto arrabbiare i miei genitori/Ho fatto arrabbiare i miei genitori ogni tanto.*
   "Sometimes I got my parents angry."

*Please remember that we cannot break *ogni tanto*.

Both *di solito* and *normalmente* mean "usually" and they always precede the verb.

For Example:

1. *La sera di solito leggo un libro prima di dormire,*
   "In the evening, I usually read a book before sleeping."

2. *Normalmente torno a casa in taxi.*
"I usually come back home by taxi."

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #16

That's It! There Is No More Italian Ice Cream for You!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#16

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Piazza della Signoria è bella, no?
2. Melissa : Eh, sì, una meraviglia, poi oggi con questo sole....
3. Alessio : Melissa, hai una macchia enorme di cioccolato sulla giacca!
4. Melissa : Oh no. E adesso?
5. Alessio : Aspetta, c'è una fontanella qui vicino. Puliamo la giacca con l'acqua, andiamo.
6. Melissa : Grazie, sei molto gentile. Brrr, ma quest'acqua è molto fredda!
7. Alessio : Ah ah ah, ci sono delle macchie anche sui tuoi jeans!
8. Melissa : Ma no! Che pasticcio.

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Piazza della Signoria is so nice, isn't it?
2. Melissa : Oh yes, it's wonderful, especially today with this sun....
3. Alessio : Melissa, you've got a huge chocolate stain on your jacket!
4. Melissa : Oh no. What now?
5. Alessio : Wait, there's a drinking fountain near here. Let's clean the jacket with water. Let's go.
6. Melissa : Thank you, you're very kind. Brrr, this water is very cold!
7. Alessio : Ah ah ah, there are some stains even on your jeans!
8. Melissa : No! What a mess.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
enorme	huge, enormous	adjective	
fontanella	drinking fountain	noun	
pulire	to clean	verb	
freddo	cold	adjective	masculine
macchia	stain	noun	
pasticcio	mess, jam, trouble	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Che insetto enorme! "What a huge bug!"	L'acqua di questa fontanella è proprio buona. "The water of this drinking fountain is really good."
Pulisciti le scarpe prima di entrare! "Wipe your feet before coming in!"	Hai pulito la tua stanza? "Did you clean your room?"
Ultimamente non pulisco mai il mio appartamento. "Recently, I never clean my apartment."	bevanda fredda cold drink
Le tue mani sono così fredde. Your hands are so cold.	Fa freddo, vero? “It’s cold, right?”
Il vento è freddo. "The wind is cold."	Ho freddo. "I am cold."
Questa bibita è molto fredda. "This drink is very cold."	C'è una macchia sulla tovaglia. "There's a stain on the tablecloth."
Ho fatto un pasticcio. "I made a mess."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Structures *C'è* ("there is") and *Ci sono* ("there are").
C'è una fontanella quì vicino./Ci sono delle macchie anche sui jeans.
"There's a drinking fountain near here."/"There are some stains even on your jeans."/"There is nothing to do."

The Italian expression *c'è* stands for "there is."

The structure of *c'è* consists of two parts: *ci*, an adverb, plus *è*, the third singular person of the verb *essere* ("to be") at the present tense. As in English, we only use *c'è* with singular nouns.

For Example:

1. *C'è un gatto sul divano.*
   "There is a cat on the sofa."

The plural form is *ci sono,* which is the Italian translation of "there are."

For Example:

1. *Ci sono dei regali sotto l'albero di Natale.*
   "There are some presents under the Christmas tree."

We convey the negative form with *non c'è/non ci sono*, so you just need to add *non* before *c'è/ci sono*.

For Example:

1. *Non c'è più pane!*
   "There's no more bread!"
2. *Non ci sono problemi.*
   "There are no problems."

Please remember that in Italian, double negations don't nullify each other. For example, we translate "there is no one" as *non c'è nessuno* and "there is nothing" as *non c'è niente*.

We often use the pattern *non c'è niente* when the preposition *da* plus an infinitive follows it.

For Example:

1. *Non c'è niente da fare.*
   "There is nothing to do."
2. *Non c'è niente da bere.*
   "There is nothing to drink."
3. *Non c'è niente da dire.*
   "There is nothing to say."

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #17

I Haven't Exercised Enough to Eat This Much Italian Food!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#17

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Fiuuu... Abbiamo mangiato tanto oggi...
2. Melissa : Hai ragione.
3. Alessio : Perché adesso non andiamo...
4. (Il cellulare di Melissa suona.)
5. Melissa : Pronto!? Ah ciao Daniele, sì...che giorno è oggi? ...ah sì scusa, no non sono tornata a casa... Va bene, compro io il pane. A dopo, ciao!
6. Alessio : C'è qualche problema?
7. Melissa : No, no, ma devo andare da lui adesso...
8. Alessio : Ehm... Lui? Che peccato!
9. Melissa : Mi dispiace Alessio, ci vediamo domani in ufficio, ciao!!
10. Alessio : Ah, ciao.

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Phew... Today we've eaten a lot...
2. Melissa : You're right.
3. Alessio : Now, why don't we go to...
4. (Melissa's mobile rings.)
5. Melissa : Hello!? Ah, hi, Daniel, yes... What day is today?... Oh yes, sorry, no, I haven't come back home... Okay, I'll buy the bread. See you later, bye!
6. Alessio : Is there any problem?
7. Melissa : No, no, but now I have to go to him...
8. Alessio : Ehm... Him? What a pity!
9. Melissa : I'm sorry, Alessio. See you tomorrow in the office, bye!!
10. Alessio : Ah, bye.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
ufficio	office	noun	masculine
adesso	now	adverb	
in	in	preposition	
tornare	to go back, to come back, to get back	verb	
pane	bread	noun	masculine
problema	problem	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

lavorare in ufficio work at the office	ufficio dell'azienda company office
Le persone stanno lavorando in ufficio. The people are working at the office.	ufficio di lavoro work office
La gente sta lavorando in ufficio. The people are working at the office.	ufficio d'azienda company office
Il mio ufficio è al secondo piano. "My office is on the second floor."	Vado in ufficio ogni giorno alle 8 del mattino. "I go to the office everyday at 8:00 in the morning."
Potresti venire nel nostro ufficio per firmare il contratto? "Could you come to our office to sign the contract?"	Vivo vicino al mio ufficio "I live near my office. "
Questo ufficio è molto grande. "This office is very big."	A che piano è l'ufficio del Dott. Rossi? "On what floor is the office of Doctor Rossi?"
Che cosa vuoi fare adesso? What do you want to do now?	Adesso, per favore ascoltami. "Now, please listen to me."
Adesso scrivo un'e-mail. "Now I write an e-mail."	Adesso piove. "It is raining now."
In questa classe ci sono venti bambini. "In this class, there are twenty kids."	In guerra e in amore tutto è lecito. "Everything is fair in love and war."
Luca torna da scuola verso l'una. "Luke comes back from school about one p.m."	Ieri sono tornato a casa tardi. "Yesterday I got back home late."

Vorrei tornare a S. Gimignano. "I would like to go back to S. Gimignano."	pane affettato e panini sliced bread and bread rolls
pane affettato sliced bread	Ogni domenica mattina compriamo pane, torta e biscotti in panetteria. Every Sunday morning we buy bread, cake, and cookies at the bakery.
Adoro il pane caldo. "I love warm bread."	Puoi comprare del pane? "Can you buy some bread?"
Quanto pane mangi al giorno? "How much bread do you eat in a day?"	Risolvi il problema di matematica. Answer the math problem.
Ho un grande problema. "I have a big problem."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the *Passato Prossimo* Tense of First Conjugation Verbs (-are).
Abbiamo mangiato tanto oggi./Non sono tornata a casa.
"We've eaten a lot today."/"I haven't come back home."

We use the *passato prossimo* tense ("present perfect") to report actions or events that took place in the past. It is a compound tense of two words: the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *avere* or *essere,* and the "past participle," *participio passato*, of the main verb. The past participle of first conjugation *-are* verbs mainly ends in *-ato*. Italian dictionaries provide the past participles of the most frequently used verbs.

When choosing the auxiliary verb *essere* or *avere,* we should consider the main verbs they are attached to. As a general rule, transitive verbs take *avere* and intransitive verbs take *essere*. However, the following list shows the most important guidelines to keep in mind when choosing the appropriate auxiliary verb.

AUXILIARY *ESSERE*:

- Verbs expressing movement or immobility

For Example:

Italian	"English"
andare	"to go"
venire	"to come"
entrare	"to enter"
uscire	"to go out"
rimanere	"to remain"
stare	"to stay"
tornare	"to come back"

- Verbs indicating changes in state of being

For Example:

Italian	"English"
nascere	"to be born"
diventare	"to become"
morire	"to die"

- Reflexive verbs

For Example:

Italian	"English"
alzarsi	"to stand up"
lavarsi	"to wash"
truccarsi	"to put one's makeup on"

AUXILIARY *AVERE*:

- All the transitive verbs

For Example:

Italian	"English"
mangiare	"to eat"
scrivere	"to write"
comprare	"to buy"
leggere	"to read"

- Some intransitive verbs

For Example:

Italian	"English"
passeggiare	"to stroll"
camminare	"to walk"
viaggiare	"to travel"

The best way to know whether to use *essere* or *avere* to form the *passato prossimo* is to look the verb up in the dictionary to find out which auxiliary we should employ.

For Example:

Passato Prossimo

mangiare ("to eat")

Italian	"English"
Io ho mangiato	"I have eaten"/"I ate"
Tu hai mangiato	"You have eaten"/"You ate"
Lui/Lei ha mangiato	"He/She/It has eaten"/ "He/She/It ate"
Noi abbiamo mangiato	"We have eaten"/"We ate"
Voi avete mangiato	"You have eaten"/"You ate"
Loro hanno mangiato	"They have eaten"/"They ate"

tornare ("to come back," "to go back")

Italian	"English"
*Io sono tornato/a**	"I have come"/"I came back"
Tu sei tornato/a	"You have come"/"You came back"
Lui/Lei è tornato/a	"He/She/It has come"/ "He/She/It came back"
Noi siamo tornati/e	"We have come"/"We came back"
Voi siete tornati/e	"You have come"/"You came back"
Loro sono tornati/e	"They have come"/ "They came back"

*Please notice that the past participle conjugated with *essere* has four possible endings, depending on the gender and number of its subject.

We convey the negative form by adding *non* before the auxiliary verb.

For Example:

1. *Non ho mangiato.*
   "I haven't eaten."

2. *Non sono tornato*
"I haven't come back."

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #18
I Haven't Been on Time in Italy Yet!

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Italian
Main
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences
Grammar

#18

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Ciao Ilaria, sei occupata?
2. Ilaria : No, no. Faccio solo delle fotocopie.
3. Alessio : Ah, senti, hai visto Melissa?
4. Ilaria : No, non ancora, strano, è sempre puntuale...
5. Alessio : Sì.. Voi siete molto amiche?
6. Ilaria : Mah, abbastanza... perché?
7. Alessio : Sai se lei ha il ragazzo?
8. (Melissa entra in ufficio.)
9. Melissa : Buongiorno!
10. Ilaria : (Rivolta a Alessio) ...come scusa?
11. Alessio : No, no, no, niente...

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Hi, Ilaria, are you busy?
2. Ilaria : No. I'm only making some photocopies.
3. Alessio : Ah, listen, have you seen Melissa?
4. Ilaria : No, not yet, it's strange, she's always on time...
5. Alessio : Yes... Are you close friends?
6. Ilaria : Well, kind of... Why?
7. Alessio : Do you know whether she has a boyfriend?
8. (Melissa enters the office.)
9. Melissa : Good morning!
10. Ilaria : (talking to Alessio) ...Sorry, what?
11. Alessio : Oh, no, nothing...

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
amico	friend	noun	masculine
vedere	to look, to watch, to see	verb	
occupato	busy	adjective	masculine
abbastanza	enough, quite, fairly, rather	adverb	
fotocopia	photocopy	noun	
puntuale	on time, punctual	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La ragazza con i capelli castani sta consolando la sua amica. The brown haired girl is cheering up her friend.	vero amico true friend
Il ragazzo può sentire il suo amico. The boy can hear his friend.	Davide è un amico. "David is a friend."
Un buon amico. "A good friend."	Ti presento la mia amica Valeria. "Let me introduce you to my friend Valeria."
Oh, vedo mia madre. "Oh, I'm seeing my mother."	Andiamo a vedere una gara di sci. "Let’s go watch a ski competition."
Hai visto quel film? "Have you seen that movie?"	Hai visto il mio cellulare? "Have you seen my cell phone?"
Oggi, sono occupato. Today, I'm busy.	Sei occupato sabato? "Are you busy on Saturday?"
Mi dispiace, oggi sono occupato. "I'm sorry, I'm busy today."	Questa settimana sono stato molto occupato. "I've been very busy this week."
Questo libro è abbastanza interessante. "This book is quite interesting."	Oggi è abbastanza nuvoloso. "Today it's quite cloudy."
Ecco le fotocopie! "Here there are the photocopies!"	In Giappone treni e bus sono sempre puntuali. "In Japan trains and buses are always very punctual."
Non sei mai puntuale! "You are never on time!"	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the *Passato Prossimo* Tense of Second Conjugation -ere Verbs.
Hai visto Melissa?
"Have you seen Melissa?"

The *passato prossimo* structure for second conjugation -*ere* verbs is the same as that of first conjugation -*are* verbs. We should follow the same process to form it: that is, use the auxiliary verb *essere* or *avere* conjugated at the present indicative + the past participle of the main verb.

To make negative statements, we only need to add *non* before the auxiliary verb. As we have previously mentioned, please check the main verb in a dictionary to find out both the appropriate auxiliary verb to use and the past participle of the main verb. Here follows a list of the most frequently used -*ere* verbs conjugated at the *passato prossimo* tense. We will give you the first singular person, *io.*

(auxiliary *essere*)

For Example:

1. *scendere* ("to get off")
   Io sono sceso/a.
   "I have got off." or "I got off."
2. *vivere* ("to live")
   Io sono vissuto/a.
   "I have lived." or "I lived."
3. *cadere* ("to fall")
   Io sono caduto/a.
   "I have fallen." or "I fell."

(auxiliary *avere*)

For Example:

1. *scrivere* ("to write")
   Io ho scritto.
   "I have written." or "I wrote."
2. *bere* ("to drink")
   Io ho bevuto.
   "I have drunk." or "I drank."
3. *prendere* ("to take")
   Io ho preso.
   "I have taken." or "I took."

Passato Prossimo

vedere ("to see" or "to watch")

Italian	"English"
Io ho visto	"I have seen"/"I saw"
Tu hai visto	"You have seen"/"You saw"
Lui/Lei ha visto	"He/She/It has seen"/ "He/She/It saw"
Noi abbiamo visto	"We have seen"/"We saw"
Voi avete visto	"You have seen"/"You saw"
Loro hanno visto	"They have seen"/"They saw"

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #19

Haven't You Done Enough Italian Work Today?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#19

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Ilaria : Oggi è venerdì.
2. Melissa : Scrivo questa e-mail e ho finito.
3. (Alessio entra nella stanza.)
4. Alessio : Ragazze, dopo il lavoro andiamo a bere un aperitivo, venite?
5. Ilaria : Va bene, offri tu?
6. Alessio : Volentieri!
7. Melissa : Allora vengo anche io!

ENGLISH

1. Ilaria : Today is Friday.
2. Melissa : I write this e-mail and I've finished.
3. (Alessio enters the room.)
4. Alessio : Girls, we're going to drink an aperitif after work, are you coming?
5. Ilaria : All right, is it your treat?
6. Alessio : With pleasure!
7. Melissa : In that case, I'm coming too!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
venerdì	Friday	noun	masculine
aperitivo	aperitif	noun	masculine
bere	to drink	verb	
volentieri	willingly, gladly, sure, with pleasure	adverb	
dopo	after, afterwards, later	adverb	
offrire	to offer, to pay	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

venerdì 8 dicembre Friday, December 8th	Scrivi i programmi per venerdì sul calendario. Write the plans for Friday on the calendar.
Lunedì, martedì, mercoledì, giovedì e venerdì sono giorni settimanali. Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday are weekdays.	Venerdì è il giorno dopo giovedì. "Friday is the day after Thursday."
Domani è venerdì. "Tomorrow is Friday."	Venerdì sera andiamo in discoteca? "Let's go to the disco Friday night."
L'aperitivo più famoso è il Campari. "The most famous aperitif is Campari."	Questo aperitivo è molto buono. "This aperitif is very good."
Mia madre non beve alcolici. "My mother doesn't drink alcohol."	Beviamo un tè? "Shall we drink tea?"
Bevo un po' di vino. "I drink some wine."	Bevo sempre un caffè dopo pranzo. "I always drink coffee after lunch."
Beviamo un caffè? Volentieri. "Do we drink a coffee? With pleasure."	Vengo volentieri con voi a mangiare la pizza. "I gladly come with you to eat a pizza."
Vengo volentieri al cinema. "I'd gladly come to the movie theater."	Se vuoi ci possiamo vedere dopo cena. "If you want, we can see each other after dinner."
Offro la cena a tutti! "I offer the dinner to everybody!"	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the *Passato Prossimo* Tense of Third Conjugation -ire Verbs.
Ho finito.
"I've finished."

When we decide to use the *passato prossimo* with *-ire* verbs of the third conjugation, we should simply follow the rules given for other conjugations. We fully analyzed this process in previous lessons.

However, it is necessary to remember that when *avere* is the auxiliary verb, the past participle always ends in *-o* regardless of the subject of the verb.

Below we have a list of the most frequently used *-ire* verbs conjugated at the *passato prossimo* tense. We will now provide the inflection of the first singular person, *io.*

For Example:

(auxiliary *essere*)

1. *partire* ("to leave")
   Io sono partito/a.
   "I have left." or "I left."
2. *salire* ("to get on")
   Io sono salito/a.
   "I have got on." or "I got on."
3. *venire* ("to come")
   Io sono venuto/a.
   "I have come." or "I came."

(auxiliary *avere*)

For Example:

1. *capire* ("to understand")
   Io ho capito.
   "I have understood." or "I understood."
2. *dormire* ("to sleep")
   Io ho dormito.
   "I have slept." or "I slept."
3. *aprire* ("to open")
   Io ho aperto.
   "I have opened." or "I opened."

Passato Prossimo
finire ("to finish")

Italian	**"English"**
Io ho finito	"I have finished"/"I finished"
Tu hai finito	"You have finished"/"You finished"
Lui/Lei ha finito	"He/She has finished"/ "He/She finished"
Noi abbiamo finito	"We have finished"/"We finished"
Voi avete finito	"You have finished"/ "You finished"
Loro hanno finito	"They have finished"/ "They finished"

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #20
I Haven't Struck Out Yet in Italian!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#20

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Alessio, grazie per il consiglio, questo spritz è molto buono.
2. Alessio : Ah, prego. Melissa, ieri non sei venuta a lavoro, va tutto bene?
3. Melissa : Sì, sono stata malata, ma niente di grave.
4. Alessio : Senti, perché non facciamo un giro in macchina domenica?
5. Melissa : Ah, domenica? Dove andiamo?
6. Alessio : Andiamo a Siena!
7. Melissa : A Siena?! Non ho mai avuto occasione di andarci!
8. Alessio : Perfetto!

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : Alessio, thank you for the advice, this spritz is very good.
2. Alessio : Ah, you're welcome. Melissa, yesterday you didn't come to work. Is everything all right?
3. Melissa : Yes, I've been sick, but nothing serious.
4. Alessio : Listen, why don't we go for a drive on Sunday?
5. Melissa : Ah, Sunday? Where do we go?
6. Alessio : Let's go to Siena!
7. Melissa : To Siena?! I've never had the chance to go there!
8. Alessio : Perfect!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
perfetto	perfect	adjective	
grave	serious, hard, heavy, harsh	adjective	
consiglio	advice	noun	masculine
malato	sick, ill	adjective	
occasione	chance, occasion	noun	
macchina	car	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Un lavoro perfetto! "A perfect job."	È perfetto! "It's perfect!"
Ho un grave problema. "I have a serious problem."	È accaduto un fatto grave. "A serious event has happened."
Segui il mio consiglio. "Follow my advice."	Un consiglio importante. "An important advice."
Segui il mio consiglio. "Follow my advice."	Sono sempre malato. "I'm always sick."
Ho l'occasione di incontrarti. "I have the chance to meet you."	Le famiglie in Italia di solito hanno 2 macchine. "Families in Italy usually own two cars."
La mia macchina non è nuova. "My car is not new."	Sono venuto in macchina. "I came by car."
Ieri ho provato una macchina nuova. "Yesterday I tried a new car."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the *Passato Prossimo* ("Present Perfect") Tense of *Essere* and *Avere* Verbs.
Sono stata malata./Non ho mai avuto occasione.
"I've been sick."/"I've never had the chance."

The *passato prossimo* tense is composed of the auxiliary verb *essere* ("to be") or *avere* ("to have") conjugated at the present indicative, followed by the past participle of the main verb. This structure does not change even when the main verb is *essere* or *avere.*

The verb *essere* always requires the auxiliary *essere* (obviously conjugated at the present indicative). Its past participle equivalent is *stato*. As we previously mentioned, when the auxiliary is *essere*, the past participle changes according to the gender and number of the subject, having four possible different endings. The conjugation follows.

***Essere* ("to be")**

Italian	"English"
Io sono stato/a	"I have been"/"I was"
Tu sei stato/a	"You have been"/"You were"
Lui/Lei è stato/a	"He/She/It has been"/ "He/She/It was"
Noi siamo stati/e	"We have been"/"We were"
Voi siete stati/e	"You have been"/"You were"
Loro sono stati/e	"They have been"/"They were"

On the other hand, we form the *passato prossimo* tense of the verb *avere* with the present indicative of the verb *avere,* followed by its past participle, *avuto*. As you can clearly see in the scheme below, the past participle's endings do not change, as is the case with all the other verbs requiring the auxiliary *avere*.

Avere **("to have")**

Italian	"English"
Io ho avuto	"I have had"/"I had"
Tu hai avuto	"You have had"/"You had"
Lui/Lei ha avuto	"He/She/It has had"/ "He/She/It had"
Noi abbiamo avuto	"We have had"/"We had"
Voi avete avuto	"You have had"/"You had"
Loro hanno avuto	"They have had"/"They had"

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #21
You Can Count on These Italian Words

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#21

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Due bicchieri di spumante per favore.
2. Cameriere : Sì, ecco qua! Fanno otto euro.
3. Melissa : Grazie Alessio, ma questo è l'ultimo...
4. Alessio : Come vuoi tu.
5. Melissa : Queste patatine sono molto saporite.
6. Alessio : Sì, ma troppo piccanti per me!
7. Melissa : Tra qualche minuto vado a casa. Ti telefono domani.
8. Alessio : D'accordo.

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Two glasses of spumante, please.
2. Waiter : Yes, here they are! It's eight euros.
3. Melissa : Thank you, Alessio, but this is the last one...
4. Alessio : As you wish.
5. Melissa : These chips are very tasty.
6. Alessio : Yes, but too spicy for me!
7. Melissa : In a few minutes, I go home. I'll call you tomorrow.
8. Alessio : Okay.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
bicchiere	glass	noun	masculine
saporito	good, tasty, savory	adjective	
piccante	hot, spicy	adjective	
ultimo	last, latest, farthest, final	adjective	
spumante	sparkling wine	noun	masculine
telefonare	to phone, to call	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Il bicchiere è nel mobile. “The glass is in the cupboard.”	Quel bicchiere è piccolo. “That glass is small.”
Che bel bicchiere. "What a nice glass."	Due bicchieri di vino rosso. "Two glasses of red wine."
Vorrei un bicchiere di Coca-Cola. "I'd like a glass of Coke."	Questo formaggio è molto saporito. "This cheese is very tasty."
È molto saporito. "It's very tasty."	La cucina del Sud Italia è piccante. "Southern Italy cuisine is spicy."
Mi piace mangiare cibo piccante. "I like to eat spicy food."	Gli ultimi saranno i primi. "The last ones will be the first ones."
Questa è l'ultima volta. "This is the last time."	L’ultimo treno per Ravenna è alle venti e quaranta. "The last train for Ravenna is at eight forty."
Mi piace lo spumante con il dolce. "I like sparkling wine with dessert."	Telefono alla polizia. "I call the police."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Cardinal Numbers.
Due bicchieri di spumante./Fanno otto euro.
"Two glasses of sparkling wine."/"It's eight euros."

We write numbers in Italian as a single word, and we usually position them before the noun.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
tre euro	"three euros"
sei bicchieri	"six glasses"
ventidue carte	"twenty-two cards"

As in English, in Italian cardinal numbers fall in Italian into the adjective category, but contrary to other standard Italian adjectives, they never change their ending vowels. There are three main exceptions to this general rule:

Although *uno/una* may also be a number, it follows the rules of the simple indefinite article *uno/una*, thus changing its ending vowel according to the (obviously singular) noun it refers to.

For Example:

1. *uno scaffale*
   "a shelf"
2. *una sedia*
   "a chair"

Both *milione* ("million") and *miliardo* ("billion") are masculine nouns and we have to conjugate them accordingly. When referring to definite quantities, they are followed by the particle *di*.

For Example:

1. *Ci sono cinque milioni di persone in questa città.*
   "There are five million people in this city."
2. *La terra si staccò dal sole cinque miliardi di anni fa.*
   "Earth detached from the sun five billion years ago."

Number	*Italian*	"English"
1	*uno*	"one"
2	*due*	"two"
3	*tre*	"three"
4	*quattro*	"four"
5	*cinque*	"five"
6	*sei*	"six"
7	*sette*	"seven"
8	*otto*	"eight"
9	*nove*	"nine"
10	*dieci*	"ten"
11	*undici*	"eleven"
12	*dodici*	"twelve"
13	*tredici*	"thirteen"
14	*quattordici*	"fourteen"
15	*quindici*	"fifteen"
16	*sedici*	"sixteen"
17	*diciassette*	"seventeen"
18	*diciotto*	"eighteen"
19	*diciannove*	"nineteen"
20	*venti*	"twenty"
21	*ventuno*	"twenty-one"
22	*ventidue*	"twenty-two"
23	*ventitré*	"twenty-three"
24	*ventiquattro*	"twenty-four"
25	*venticinque*	"twenty-five"
26	*ventisei*	"twenty-six"
27	*ventisette*	"twenty-seven"
28	*ventotto*	"twenty-eight"
29	*ventinove*	"twenty-nine"
30	*trenta*	"thirty"
40	*quaranta*	"forty"
50	*cinquanta*	"fifty"
60	*sessanta*	"sixty"
70	*settanta*	"seventy"

80	*ottanta*	"eighty"
90	*novanta*	"ninety"
100	*cento*	"one hundred"
200	*duecento*	"two hundred"
300	*trecento*	"three hundred"
400	*quattrocento*	"four hundred"
500	*cinquecento*	"five hundred"
600	*seicento*	"six hundred"
700	*settecento*	"seven hundred"
800	*ottocento*	"eight hundred"
900	*novecento*	"nine hundred"
1000	*mille*	"thousand"

We form Italian compound numbers above twenty (i.e., adjectives made of more than one number) by simply adding each element in successive order.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
cinquantasette	"fifty-seven"
centosessantanove	"one hundred sixty-nine"
milleduecentotrentacinque	"one thousand, two hundred thirty-five"

The numbers *venti*, *trenta*, *quaranta*, and so on drop the final vowel before *uno* and *otto*, both of which begin with a vowel.

For Example:

1. *ventuno*
   "twenty-one"
2. *ventotto*
   "twenty-eight"

Finally, note that whenever a compound number ends with the number *tre* ("three"), we have to use the acute accent on the ending *-é*. The cardinal number "three" does not need any accent on its ending vowel.

For Example:

1. *ventitré*
   "twenty-three"

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #22
How to Finish First in Italy

CONTENTS

Dialogue - Italian
Main
English
Vocabulary
Sample sentences
Grammar

#22

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Pronto?
2. Melissa : Ciao Alessio, sono Melissa.
3. Alessio : Ah, ciao Melissa.
4. Melissa : A che ora partiamo domani per Siena?
5. Alessio : Dunque... Alle dieci? Troppo tardi?
6. Melissa : No, va bene, sono così emozionata, per me è la prima volta a Siena.
7. Alessio : Sai, è una piccola città, ma ci sono tante cose da vedere.
8. Melissa : E da mangiare? C'è qualcosa di buono?
9. Alessio : Ah, ah sicuramente! Hai una macchina fotografica?
10. Melissa : Sì, sì. È già nello zaino!

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Hello?
2. Melissa : Hi, Alessio, it's Melissa.
3. Alessio : Ah, hi, Melissa.
4. Melissa : At what time are we leaving for Siena tomorrow?
5. Alessio : Well... What about ten? Is it too late?
6. Melissa : No it's okay. I'm so excited; it's the first time in Siena for me.
7. Alessio : You know, it's a small town, but there are many things to see.
8. Melissa : And food? Is there something good?
9. Alessio : Uh huh, sure! Do you have a camera?
10. Melissa : Yes. It's already in the backpack!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
volta	time	noun	feminine
dunque	well, therefore	conjunction	
emozionato	excited, moved	adjective	
città	city, town	noun	paese
macchina fotografica	camera	phrase	feminine
zaino	backpack, rucksack	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Fai pagare me questa volta. "Let me pay this time."	Matteo va in piscina tre volte alla settimana. "Matthew goes to swimming pool three times a week."
Questa volta paghi tu! "This time you pay!"	Questa è l'ultima volta che ti aspetto! "This is the last time I wait for you!"
Dunque, cosa mangiamo? "Well, what do we eat?"	Mia sorella è emozionata. "My sister is excited."
Da che città vieni? "Which town do you come from?"	Roma è una grande città. "Rome is a big city."
Ho regalato una nuova macchina fotografica a mia sorella per il suo compleanno. "I gave a new camera to my sister for her birthday."	Ho una nuova macchina fotografica. "I have a new camera."
La penna è nel mio zaino. "The pen is in my backpack."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on Italian Ordinal Numbers.
Per me è la prima volta a Siena.
"It's the first time in Siena for me."

We use ordinal numbers, as in English, to indicate order or rank in a given succession or order.

Italian ordinal numbers fall into the adjective category. Unlike cardinal numbers, they change their ending vowel according to the gender and number of the noun they refer to.

The following list shows Italian ordinal numbers from one to thirty. The ending vowels are provided in the singular masculine form.

Number	*Italian*	"English"
1°/1st	*primo*	"first"
2°/2nd	*secondo*	"second"
3°/3rd	*terzo*	"third"
4°/4th	*quarto*	"fourth"
5°/5th	*quinto*	"fifth"
6°/6th	*sesto*	"sixth"
7°/7th	*settimo*	"seventh"
8°/8th	*ottavo*	"eighth"
9°/9th	*nono*	"ninth"
10°/10th	*decimo*	"tenth"
11°/11th	*undicesimo*	"eleventh"
12°/12th	*dodicesimo*	"twelfth"
13°/13th	*tredicesimo*	"thirteenth"
14°/14th	*quattordicesimo*	"fourteenth"
15°/15th	*quindicesimo*	"fifteenth"
16°/16th	*sedicesimo*	"sixteenth"
17°/17th	*diciassettesimo*	"seventeenth"
18°/18th	*diciottesimo*	"eighteenth"
19°/19th	*diciannovesimo*	"nineteenth"
20°/20th	*ventesimo*	"twentieth"
21°/21st	*ventunesimo*	"twenty-first"
22°/22nd	*ventiduesimo*	"twenty-second"
23°/23rd	*ventitreesimo*	"twenty-third"
24°/24th	*ventiquattresimo*	"twenty-fourth"
25°/25th	*venticinquesimo*	"twenty-fifth"
26°/26th	*ventiseiesimo*	"twenty-sixth"
27°/27th	*ventisettesimo*	"twenty-seventh"
28°/28th	*ventottesimo*	"twenty-eighth"
29°/29th	*ventinovesimo*	"twenty-ninth"
30°/30th	*trentesimo*	"thirtieth"

Each of the first ten ordinal numbers has a distinctly unique form. We form ordinal numbers after *decimo* ("tenth") by dropping the final vowel of the corresponding cardinal number and adding the suffix -*esimo.*

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
ventiquattro	"twenty-four"
ventiquattresimo	"twenty-fourth"
trentuno	"thirty-one"
trentunesimo	"thirty-first"

Numbers ending in -*tré* and -*sei* retain the final vowel, though -*tré* drops the acute accent in the written form.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
ventitré	"twenty-three"
ventitreesimo	"twenty-third"
trentasei	"thirty-six"
trentaseiesimo	"thirty-sixth"

As in English, ordinal numbers normally precede the noun.

For Example:

1. *Il mio appartamento è al sesto piano.*
   "My apartment is on the sixth floor."
2. *Questo affresco è del dodicesimo secolo.*
   "This fresco is from the twelfth century."
3. *E' la quinta volta che ascolto questa canzone.*
   "It's the fifth time that I have listened to this song."
4. *Oggi è il terzo gelato che mangio!*
   "It is the third ice cream that I have eaten today."
5. *Fu amore a prima vista.*
   "It was love at first sight."

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #23
Don't Worry About Your Future in Italy!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#23

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Hai le scarpe adatte? Oggi cammineremo tanto.
2. Melissa : Sì, non ti preoccupare... Posso accendere la radio?
3. Alessio : Certo! Ah ecco il meteo! Bene, oggi bel tempo!
4. Melissa : Dove incontriamo Ilaria e Alberto?
5. Alessio : Cosa? Vengono anche loro?!
6. Melissa : Sì, Ilaria mi ha mandato un messaggio stamattina.
7. (bi-bip)
8. Alessio : Ecco il messaggio di Ilaria!

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : Do you have suitable shoes? Today we'll walk a lot.
2. Melissa : Yes, don't worry... Can I turn the radio on?
3. Alessio : Sure! Ah, here is the weather forecast! Fine, today nice weather!
4. Melissa : Where do we meet with Ilaria and Alberto?
5. Alessio : What? Are they coming too?!
6. Melissa : Yes, Ilaria sent me a message this morning.
7. (bi-bip)
8. Alessio : Ah, here is Ilaria's message!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
incontrare	to meet	verb	
potere	to be able, can	verb	
messaggio	message	noun	masculine
adatto	suitable, fit, proper	adjective	
meteo	weather forecast	noun	
mandare	to send	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Dopo incontro Rossella. "I'll meet with Rossella later."	Ieri ho incontrato Luisa. "Yesterday I met Luisa."
Ho incontrato un vecchio amico. "I met an old friend."	Posso entrare? "Can I come in?"
Posso aiutarti? "Can I help you?"	Dentro la caverna abbiamo trovato un messaggio nascosto. "Inside the cave we found a hidden message."
Che messaggio lungo! "What a long message!"	Ho capito il messaggio. "I understood the message."
Questo non è il modo adatto per risolvere i problemi. "This is not the proper way to solve problems."	Questo vestito non è adatto per stasera. "This dress is not suitable for tonight."
Ascolto il meteo ogni giorno. "I listen to the weather forecast every day."	Le mando subito una mail. "I'll send you an e-mail right away.(polite)"
Mandate un pacco in Italia? "Are you sending a package to Italy?"	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on *Futuro Semplice* Tense of the First Conjugation -are Verbs.
Oggi cammineremo tanto.
"Today we'll walk a lot."

We use the *futuro semplice* to describe future actions, thus expressing the idea of "to be going to" or "will (do something)," since there is no difference in Italian between planned or unplanned future actions. We form the *futuro semplice* of regular verbs by dropping the final *-e* of the infinitive and adding the personal endings *-ò, -ai, -à, -emo, -ete,* and *-anno*.

First conjugation *-are* verbs change the *-a* of the infinitive into *-e*.

For Example:

***Camminare* ("to walk")**

Italian	"English"
Io camminer-ò	"I will walk."
Tu camminer-ai	"You will walk."
Lui/lei camminer-à	"He/she will walk."
Noi camminer-emo	"We will walk."
Voi camminer-ete	"You will walk."
Loro camminer-anno	"They will walk."

For Example:

1. *portare* ("to bring")
   Io porterò.
   "I will bring."
2. *diventare* ("to become")
   Io diventerò.
   "I will become."
3. *arrivare* ("to arrive")
   Io arriverò.
   "I will arrive."

In addition to changing the *-a* of the infinitive, verbs ending in *-ciare* and *-giare* drop the *-i* in order to keep the [*tʃ*] sound (as in "scotch").

For Example:

1. *cominciare* ("to start," "to begin")
   Io comincerò.
   "I will start."
2. *baciare* ("to kiss")
   Io bacerò.
   "I will kiss."
3. *mangiare* ("to eat")
   Io mangerò.
   "I will eat."

Verbs ending in *-care* or *-gare* add *-h* after *-c* and *-g* of the stem to retain the hard [k] sound (as in "car").

For Example:

1. *traslocare* ("to move")
   Io traslocherò.
   "I will move."
2. *giocare* ("to play")
   Io giocherò.
   "I will play."
3. *pregare* ("to pray")
   Io pregherò.
   "I will pray."

Certain two-syllable irregular verbs keep the characteristic *-a* of the infinitive ending.

For Example:

1. *dare* ("to give")
   Io darò.
   "I will give."
2. *fare* ("to do")
   Io farò.
   "I will do."
3. *stare* ("to stay")
   Io starò.
   "I will stay."

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #24

Together, We Will Choose What to Do in Italy

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#24

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Alessio : Questa è Piazza del Campo, saliamo sulla Torre del Mangia?
2. Melissa : Sceglieremo cosa fare insieme agli altri...
3. Alessio : Va bene, hai ragione.
4. Melissa : Comunque questa piazza è bellissima.
5. Alessio : È una delle piazze medievali più grandi d'Europa.
6. Melissa : Sì, c'è scritto anche in questa guida della città. Quello è il Palazzo Pubblico?
7. Alessio : Sì. Ah, ecco i ragazzi!
8. Melissa : (urlando) Hey!! Siamo qua!

ENGLISH

1. Alessio : This is Piazza del Campo; shall we go up to the Torre del Mangia?
2. Melissa : We'll choose what to do together with the others...
3. Alessio : Well, you're right.
4. Melissa : This square is beautiful, though.
5. Alessio : It's one of the largest medieval squares in Europe.
6. Melissa : Yes, that's also written in this city guide. Is that Palazzo Pubblico?
7. Alessio : Yes. Ah, here are the guys!
8. Melissa : (screaming) Hey!! We're here!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
salire	to get on, to get in, to go up	verb	
guida	information guide	noun	
scegliere	to choose	verb	
insieme	together	adverb	
medievale	medieval	adjective	
Europa	Europe	proper noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Salgo al primo piano. "I go up to the first floor."	Non sono mai salito su un aeroplano. "I've never been on an airplane."
Questa è la guida di Roma. "This is Rome's information guide."	Perché hai scelto quel colore? "Why did you choose that color?"
Nessuno può decidere per te, lo devi fare da solo. "Nobody can choose for you, you have to do it yourself."	Non so cosa scegliere. "I don't know what to choose."
Dormono tutti insieme in una stanza. "They sleep all together in one room."	Facciamo una passeggiata insieme? "Shall we take a walk together?"
Siena è una città medievale. "Siena is a medieval city."	La catena montuosa delle Alpi è situata in Europa. The Alps mountain range is located in Europe.
Europa dell'Est Eastern Europe	Europa dell'Ovest. Western Europe
mappa d'Europa map of Europe	Mi piace vivere in Europa. "I like living in Europe."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the *Futuro Semplice* Tense of Second Conjugation -ere Verbs.
Sceglieremo cosa fare insieme agli altri.
"We'll choose what to do together with the others."

The procedure we use to create the *futuro semplice* tense of second conjugation *-ere* verbs is the same as the one we use for first conjugation *-are* verbs, except that second conjugation verbs do not change the second-to-last vowel of the infinitive. They simply drop the final *-e* of the infinitive form and add the appropriate endings *-ò, -ai, -à, -emo, -ete,* and *-anno*.

For Example:

***scegliere* ("to choose")**

Italian	"English"
Io sceglier-ò	"I will choose."
Tu sceglier-ai	"You will choose."
Lui/Lei sceglier-à	"He/She/It will choose."
Noi sceglier-emo	"We will choose."
Voi sceglier-ete	"You will choose."
Loro sceglier-anno	"They will choose."

For Example:

1. *conoscere* ("to know")
   Io conoscerò.
   "I will know."
2. *perdere* ("to lose")
   Io perderò.
   "I will lose."
3. *correre* ("to run")
   Io correrò.
   "I will run."

Many *-ere* irregular verbs change their stems when we conjugate them in *futuro semplice*. The following are some of the most common.

For Example:

1. *bere* ("to drink")
   Io berrò.
   "I will drink."
2. *vedere* ("to see")
   Io vedrò.
   "I will see."
3. *dovere* ("to have to")
   Io dovrò.
   "I will have to."

LESSON NOTES

Absolute Beginner S1 #25
Will You Be an Italian-Speaking Fool?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar

#25

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Melissa : Oh, sono veramente contenta, Siena mi piace molto, è così affascinante. Ben fatto Alessio, seguirò ancora i tuoi consigli!
2. Alessio : Sì, che giornata! Adesso sono proprio stanco.
3. Melissa : Stasera allora dormirai profondamente, ma prima devi riportarmi a casa.
4. Alessio : Mmm, forse ti lascio qui!
5. Melissa : Hey, non fare lo scemo! Non sei divertente!
6. Ilaria : Sapete, siete proprio una bella coppia voi due.
7. Melissa : Chi?
8. Alessio : Noi due, ah ah ah!

ENGLISH

1. Melissa : Oh, I'm really happy. I like Siena very much; it's so fascinating. Well done, Alessio, I'll follow your advice again.
2. Alessio : Yes, what a day! Now I'm really tired.
3. Melissa : You'll sleep deeply tonight, then, but you have to take me back home first.
4. Alessio : Mmm, probably I'll leave you here!
5. Melissa : Hey, don't be a fool! You're not funny!
6. Ilaria : You know, you two are a really cute couple.
7. Melissa : Who?
8. Alessio : The two of us, ha ha ha!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
contento	happy, content	adjective
affascinante	fascinating	adjective
seguire	to follow	verb
profondamente	deeply, profoundly	adverb
lasciare	to let go, to leave	verb
scemo	fool, idiot	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Paolo è contento. "Paolo is happy."	Sono contento. "I'm happy."
Se vieni a casa la nonna sarà contenta. "If you come home, grandmother will be happy."	Che donna affascinante. "What a fascinating woman."
Luca è un ragazzo piuttosto affascinante. "Luca is a quite fascinating guy."	Il cane segue il suo padrone. "The dog follows its owner."
Quel tipo mi sta seguendo. "That guy is following me."	Seguiamo le tracce! "Let's follow the traces."
Quel tipo mi sta seguendo. "That guy is following me."	Sono innamorato profondamente. "I am deeply in love."
Lasciami in pace! "Leave me alone!"	Sei proprio scemo! "You're very stupid!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the *Futuro Semplice* Tense of Third Conjugation -ire Verbs. ¬
Seguirò ancora i tuoi consigli.
"I'll follow your advice again."

In order to form the *futuro semplice* of third conjugation *-ire* regular verbs, we need to follow the same procedure we employ for second conjugation verbs. Therefore, we need to drop the final *-e* of the infinitive form and add the appropriate endings *-ò, -ai, -à, -emo, -ete,* and *-anno*.

For Example:

***seguire* ("to follow")**

Italian	"English"
Io seguir-ò	"I will follow"
Tu seguir-ai	"You will follow"
Lui/lei seguir-à	"He/She/It will follow"
Noi seguir-emo	"We will follow"
Voi seguir-ete	"You will follow"
Loro seguir-anno	"They will follow"

Here are some additional examples.

For Example:

1. *dormire* ("to sleep")
   Io dormirò.
   "I will sleep."
2. *uscire* ("to go out")
   Io uscirò.
   "I will go out."
3. *dire* ("to say")
   Io dirò.
   "I will say."

Certain *-ire* irregular verbs change the stem when conjugated at *futuro semplice*:

For Example:

***venire* ("to come")**

Italian	"English"
Io verr-ò	"I will come"
Tu verr-ai	"You will come"
Lui/lei verr-à	"He/She/It will come"
Noi verr-emo	"We will come"
Voi verr-ete	"You will come"
Loro verr-anno	"They will come"

For Example:

1. *Verrò da te stasera.*
   "I will come to your place tonight."
2. *Verrai alla mia festa di laurea?*
   "Are you coming to my graduation party?"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #1
Talking Technology in Italian

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#1

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Jack : Quindi, ci vediamo domani per preparare la presentazione....mmhm...non ho il tuo numero di cellulare.
2. Mieke : Non ho un cellulare. Il mio numero di casa è 045996784. Oh wow! Hai uno smartphone! Ne vorrei anch'io uno.
3. Jack : Ho anche un tablet. È molto utile! E questo è il mio portatile, molto leggero.
4. Mieke : Sei un amante della tecnologia!

ENGLISH

1. Jack : So, let's meet tomorrow to prepare our presentation...mmhm...I don't have your cell phone number.
2. Mieke : I don't have a cell phone. My house number is 045996784. Oh wow, you've got a smartphone! I also would like one.
3. Jack : I also have a tablet. It's very useful! And this is my laptop, very light.
4. Mieke : You are a tech nerd!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
leggero	light	adjective	
numero	number	noun	masculine
portatile	portable, laptop	adjective, noun	
preparare	to prepare, to make, to set, to arrange	verb	
tecnologia	technology	noun	
volere	to want, to wish, to demand	verb	
domani	tomorrow	noun	masculine
casa	home, house, one's place	noun	feminine
cellulare	cellphone, mobile phone	noun	masculine
utile	useful	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Porta solo bagagli leggeri. "Bring only light luggage."	Questo zaino è molto leggero. "This backpack is very light."
I numeri 11 e 17 sono entrambi numeri primi. The numbers 11 and 17 are both prime numbers.	Il tredici è un numero primo. "Thirteen is a prime number."
Qual è il numero di targa della tua macchina? "What's the number plate of your car?"	Uso il portatile per l'università. "I use my laptop for university."
Vorrei una radio portatile. "I would like a portable radio."	Prepariamo le valigie. "Let's prepare our luggage."
Il corso mira a preparare gli studenti per un'ampio ventaglio di carriere. "The course aims to prepare students for a wide range of careers."	Viviamo nel mondo della tecnologia. "We live in a tech world. "
Odio la tecnologia. "I hate technology."	Volere è potere. "Where there's a will there's a way."
Non voglio che i miei figli spendano tutti i loro soldi in dolci. "I don't want my children to spend all their money on sweets."	Vorrei andare al cinema con te. "I'd like to go to the cinema with you."
Voleva solo salutarti. "She just wanted to say hi."	Volere la botte piena e la moglie ubriaca. "To have your cake and eat it, too."
A domani! See you tomorrow!	Domani è il mio compleanno. Tomorrow is my birthday.
domani alle dieci e dieci. tomorrow at 10:10	Domani è mercoledì, e dopodomani è giovedì. Tomorrow is Wednesday, and the day after tomorrow is Thursday.
Ci sarà il sole domani. It will be sunny tomorrow.	domani pomeriggio tomorrow afternoon
Domani c'è la partita Italia-Germania. "Tomorrow there is the Italy-Germany match."	Ci vediamo domani allora. "I'll see you tomorrow, then."
A domani! "See you tomorrow!"	Vuoi venire a casa mia stasera? "Do you want to come to my home tonight?"

Alla sera mi piace stare a casa. "In the evening I like to stay at home."	All'ipermercato vicino casa mia ci sono degli sconti sul vestiario. "At the superstore close to my place, there are discounts on clothing."
C'è una festa a casa di Mario. "There's a party at Mario's place."	Hai un cellulare nuovo? "Have you got a new cell phone?"
È un cellulare. "It's a mobile phone."	Hai un cellulare? "Do you have a cell phone?"
Non trovo più il mio cellulare! "I can't find my cell phone anymore!"	Hai visto il mio cellulare? "Have you seen my cell phone?"
Questa agendina è molto utile. "This pocket diary is very useful."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

cellulare

In Italian, we can translate the words "cell phone" both as *cellular* and *telefonino*, which means "small telephone" ("telephone" = *telefono*). It is masculine: *il cellulare*.

portatile

Even if the word "laptop" is also popular, *portatile* is the corresponding Italian word. It comes from the verb *portare* ("to take around"). *Portatile* is also an adjective, and it means "that can be taken around."

leggero

The adjective *leggero* has two meanings like in English. It can refer to weight as well as mean "easy to digest"/"not very much."

For Example:

1. *A mezzogiorno faccio un pasto leggero.*
   "At midday, I have a light meal."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Verb *Avere* ("to Have") and *Essere* ("to Be").
Hai uno smartphone!
"You have a smartphone!"

We use the verb *avere* in different situations, and we can translate it as "to have," "to own," "to obtain," or "to hold."

In this lesson, we'll focus on *avere* to express ownership.

It's an irregular verb, and it is transitive (it takes a direct object).

The conjugation of the verb *avere* is as follows:

Italian	**"English"**
io ho	"I have"
tu hai	"you have"
lui/lei ha	"he/she has"
noi abbiamo	"we have"
voi avete	"you have"
loro hanno	"they have"

For Example:

1. *Ho anche un tablet.*
   "I also have a tablet."
2. *Noi abbiamo un cane e due gatti.*
   "We have a dog and two cats."

We also use the verb *avere* to express age. Unlike English, we do not use the verb *essere* to say how old a person is.

For Example:

1. *Sara ha diciotto anni.*
   "Sara is eighteen."
2. *Quanti anni hai?*
   "How old are you?"

Essere **("to Be")**

It's an irregular verb, and it is intransitive (it doesn't take a direct object).

The conjugation of the verb *essere* is:

Italian	"English"
io sono	"I am"
tu sei	"you are"
lui/lei è	"he/she is"
noi siamo	"we are"
voi siete	"you are"
loro sono	"they are"

For Example:

1. *Questo è il mio portatile.*
   "This is my laptop."
2. *Il mio numero di casa è 045996784.*
   "My house number is 045996784."
3. *Sei un grande amico.*
   "You are a great friend."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Gli Italiani e la Tecnologia ("The Italian People and Technology")

The Internet is becoming part of the everyday life of more and more people in Italy. In February 2013, more than 30 million users connected to the web from a PC. It is about fifty-three percent of the total population, with an increasing growth of 3.3 percent a year. The average time spent by a person on the web is one hour and forty minutes. Surprisingly, the south of Italy and the islands seem to be more involved with the usage of the Internet.
More and more stores have decided to open on the web, and one of the most famous supermarkets in Italy, *Esselunga*, lets its clients shop online and have groceries delivered at home. Unfortunately this service is still not all that cheap.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #2

What Do You Do in Your Free Time in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#2

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Cosa fai di solito dopo la scuola?
2. Jack : Lavoro in un ristorante qui vicino il mercoledì e venerdì sera. Oppure leggo qui al bar o ... dormo a casa. E tu?
3. Mieke : Anch'io lavoro. In una pasticceria, tre volte alla settimana. Il venerdì gioco a tennis e il lunedì studio italiano in una scuola in centro.
4. Jack : Ma tu parli già bene l'italiano!

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : What do you usually do after school?
2. Jack : I work in a restaurant nearby on Wednesday and Friday evenings. Or read here at the bar or...sleep at home. And you?
3. Mieke : I also work. In a patisserie, three times a week. On Fridays, I play tennis, and on Mondays, I study Italian in a school in the center.
4. Jack : But you already speak Italian well!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
centro	center	noun	masculine
mercoledi	Wednesday	noun	masculine
settimana	week	noun	feminine
qui vicino	nearby	adverb	
studiare	to study	verb	
pasticceria	pastry shop	noun	
di solito	usually	phrase	
dormire	to sleep	verb	
leggere	to read	verb	
volta	time	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La palla blu è in centro. The blue ball is in the center.	Abita in centro città. "He lives in the town center."
Che cosa fai mercoledì sera? "What are you doing on Wednesday evening?"	Ci sono sette giorni in una settimana. There are seven days in a week.
Ci sono sette giorni in una settimana. "There are seven days in a week."	La prossima settimana. "Next week."
I miei nonni abitano qui vicino. "My grandparents live nearby."	Ho deciso di studiare l'italiano come seconda lingua. "I decided to study Italian as my second language."
Studiò il francese e poi viaggiò nell'Africa occidentale. "He studied French, and then traveled to western Africa."	Quanto tempo studi al giorno? "How long do you study in a day?"
È interessante studiare l'italiano. "Studying Italian is interesting."	Peter studia ingegneria. "Peter studies engineering."
Bevo sempre il tè in questa pasticceria. "I always drink tea in this patisserie."	La domenica gli Italiani comprano un vassoio di pasticcini come dolce dopo pranzo. "On Sunday, Italian people buy a tray of assorted pastries as an after-lunch dessert."
di solito in ritardo usually late	Di solito non faccio colazione. I don't usually eat breakfast.
Di solito i miei genitori guardano film di avventura. "My parents usually watch adventure movies."	Di solito torno presto. "I usually come back early."
La domenica mio fratello dorme fino a mezzogiorno. "On Sundays, my brother sleeps until midday."	Il gatto dorme. "The cat is sleeping."
Ieri ho dormito tutto il giorno. "Yesterday, I slept all day long."	Mi piace leggere il giornale. “I like reading the newspaper.”
Leggo il giornale in biblioteca. "I read the newspaper in the library."	Leggo la sera prima di dormire. "I read in the evening before going to sleep."

Leggo il giornale. "I'm reading the newspaper."	Fai pagare me questa volta. "Let me pay this time."
Matteo va in piscina tre volte alla settimana. "Matthew goes to swimming pool three times a week."	Questa volta paghi tu! "This time you pay!"
Questa è l'ultima volta che ti aspetto! "This is the last time I wait for you!"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

mercoledi

Here are the days of the week: *lunedi*, *martedi*, *mercoledi*, *giovedi*, *venerdi*, *sabato*, and *domenica*. They are all masculine, except *domenica* ("Sunday"). We do not capitalize the days of the week in Italian.

settimana

The word *settimana* is feminine, and it contains the number *sette* ("seven").

centro

This word defines the old part of Italian cities. The center is often made up of the *piazza* ("main square"); the *duomo*, for example ("the church"); the *comune* ("city hall"); and the *corso* ("the main street") with some famous and often expensive stores.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Formation of Regular Verbs for the Present Indicative Simple Present Tense.
Lavoro in un ristorante qui vicino.
"I work in a restaurant nearby."

We divide Italian verbs into four conjugation groups according to the ending of the infinitive:

1. *-are* (e.g., *lavorare* ("to work"));
2. *-ere* (e.g., *leggere* ("to read")),
3. *-ire* (e.g., *dormire* ("to sleep")).

We conjugate Italian verbs in the various persons and numbers by adding the proper ending to the stem. The stem of regular verbs is obtained by dropping the infinitive ending. So, the stem of *lavorare* is *lavor-*; the stem of *leggere* is *legg-*; the stem of *dormire* is *dorm-*.

Here are the endings of the three conjugations:

-are	***-ere***	***-ire***
*lavor**are*** ("to work)	*legg**ere*** ("to read")	*dorm**ire*** ("to sleep")
*io lavor**o***	*io legg**o***	*io dorm**o***
*tu lavor**i***	*tu legg**i***	*tu dorm**i***
*lui/lei lavor**a***	*lui/lei legg**e***	*lui/lei dorm**e***
*noi lavor**iamo*** *voi lavor**ate***	*noi legg**iamo*** *voi legg**ete***	*noi dorm**iamo*** *voi dorm**ite***
*loro lavor**ano***	*loro legg**ono***	*loro dorm**ono***

Although it may seem tedious, if you memorize the endings for each class of verbs, it facilitates conjugation skills. With a bit of exercise and some patience, it becomes more and more natural to conjugate the regular verbs and use them appropriately.

For Example:

1. *Oppure **leggo** qui al bar o...**dormo** a casa.*
   "Or I read here at the bar or...sleep at home."
2. *Il lunedi **studio** italiano in una scuola in centro.*
   "On Mondays, I study Italian in a school in the center."

For verbs whose infinitive ending is preceded by a *-c* or a *-g*, we need to add the letter *-h* between the stem and the ending of the second person singular and first person plural.

For Example:

giocare **("to play")**

*io gioc**o***

*tu gioc**hi***

*lui/lei gioc**a***

*noi gioc**hiamo***

*voi gioc**ate***

*loro gioc**ano***

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Le Abitudini Degli Italiani **("Habits of the Italian People")**

The Italian people are creative and full of imagination? Not really. Or at least according to a recent survey published on *La Repubblica*, it doesn't seem so. Here is an average day in the life of Italian people. In the morning, they have cappuccino and brioche in the usual bar, then they take the usual route to go to the office, usually by car. Most of the people who answered a question about work said that they prefer to have the same job until retirement. After work, most people go home, have dinner, and spend the evening in front of TV. In their free time, most interviewees said that they usually do the same things during the weekend. Forty-one percent of interviewees go out only on Saturday night and always with the same friends. One out of three goes to the cinema. When they go to a restaurant, seventy-three percent of people choose to go to the same one. It seems that most Italians don't like changes or taking risks.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #3
Let's Hang Out This Weekend in Italy!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#3

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Jack : Claudio, cosa fai questo fine settimana?
2. Claudio : Sabato mattina vado a vedere una gara di nuoto. Il pomeriggio gioco a calcio con la mia squadra. La sera invece non ho programmi.
3. Jack : Io vado in pizzeria con Mieke. Perché non vieni con noi?
4. Claudio : Va bene. E domenica cosa fai?
5. Jack : Di solito vado in palestra e faccio karate, ma questa domenica la palestra è chiusa. Vorrei andare alle Terme di Acqui, ma non so...

ENGLISH

1. Jack : Claudio, what are you doing this weekend?
2. Claudio : On Saturday morning, I'll go watch a swimming competition. In the afternoon, I'll play soccer with my team. In the evening, though, I have no plans.
3. Jack : I'm going to a pizzeria with Mieke. Why don't you come with us?
4. Claudio : Sure. And what are you doing on Sunday?
5. Jack : I usually go to the gym and have a karate lesson, but this Sunday, the gym is closed. I'd like to go to Terme di Acqui, but I'm not sure...

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
palestra	gym	noun	feminine
programma	program, show, plan	noun	
vedere	to look, to watch, to see	verb	
sera	evening	noun	feminine
mattina	morning	noun	feminine
calcio	soccer, football	noun	masculine
fine settimana	weekend	phrase	masculine
pomeriggio	afternoon	noun	masculine
nuoto	swimming	noun	masculine
squadra	team	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Abbiamo guardato molte partite di pallacanestro nella palestra della scuola. We watched a lot of basketball games in the school gym.	palestra della scuola school gym
Maria va in palestra tre volte alla settimana. "Mary goes to the gym three times a week."	Quale programma stai guardando ora? Il telegiornale? "What program are you watching now? The news?"
Che programmi hai per domani? "What are your plans for tomorrow?"	Oh, vedo mia madre. "Oh, I'm seeing my mother."
Andiamo a vedere una gara di sci. "Let's go watch a ski competition."	Hai visto quel film? "Have you seen that movie?"
Hai visto il mio cellulare? "Have you seen my cell phone?"	tramonto di sera evening sunset
sera in città evening in the city	ogni sera every evening
Lavoro duramente durante il giorno, così che possa rilassarmi la sera. I work hard during the day, so I relax in the evening.	Il campo da tennis è aperto anche di sera. "The tennis court is open in the evening, too."
La sera guardo la TV. "In the evening I watch TV."	La sera di solito guardo un film. "In the evening I usually watch a movie."
Venerdì sera c'è un concerto in piazza Colombo. "Friday evening there is a concert in Columbus square."	domenica mattina Sunday morning
la mattina in the morning	Faccio jogging la mattina. I jog in the morning.
Si alza alle 8 ogni mattina. He gets up at 8 a.m. every morning.	la mattina presto early in the morning
fare la doccia alla mattina shower in the morning	Fanno una passeggiata ogni mattina. "They go for a walk every morning."

In questo periodo dell'anno fa ancora freddo di mattina. "At this time of the year it is still cold in the morning."	I nostri negozi riapriranno domani mattina. "Our stores will open again tomorrow morning."
Il lunedì mattina il medico non visita. "On Monday morning the doctor doesn't examine."	Ogni mattina mi sveglio alle sette e dieci. "Every morning, I wake up at ten past seven."
Io ho giocato a calcio con David Beckham. "I played soccer with David Beckham."	Il calcio è molto popolare in Europa. "Soccer is a very popular game in Europe."
I giocatori della nazionale italiana di calcio sono chiamati Azzurri per via delle maglie azzurre. "The Italian national football team's players are called Azzurri for their blue shirts."	È divertente giocare a calcio. "It's fun to play soccer."
fine settimana senza lavoro weekend off	Come passi i tuoi finesettimana di solito? How do you usually spend your weekends?
Il fine settimana vado al cinema. "I go to the cinema on weekends."	Cosa fai questo fine settimana? "What are you doing this weekend?"
I fine settimana lavoro. "I work on weekends."	Al mio gatto piace dormire di pomeriggio. "My cat likes sleeping in the afternoon."
Ti richiamo questo pomeriggio. "I'll call you back this afternoon."	Questo pomeriggio nevicherà. "It's going to snow this afternoon."
Il pomeriggio Giovanni gioca con i suoi amici. "In the afternoon John plays with his friends."	Buon pomeriggio. "Good afternoon."
Le lezioni sono sempre di pomeriggio. "Classes are always in the afternoon."	gara di nuoto swimming race
ornitorinco che nuota swimming platypus	Mi piace nuotare. I like swimming.
Da bambina il nuoto era lo sport che più odiavo. "When I was a child, swimming was the sport I hated the most."	Perché non vai a lezione di nuoto? "Why don't you go to swimming lessons?"

Il nuoto è uno sport faticoso. "Swimming is a tiring sport."	La sua squadra di calcio preferita è Dallas Cowboys. Her favorite team is the Dallas Cowboys football team.
gioco di squadra team game	sforzo di squadra team effort
La squadra sta discutendo. The team is having a discussion.	Squadra, siete pronti? Mani al centro! Okay team, hands in.
Lascerà la squadra il prossimo anno. "She'll quit the team next year."	Andiamo a vedere la squadra americana di basket! "Let's go and see the American team of basketball!"
Qual è la tua squadra preferita? "What's your favorite team?"	Ci sono undici giocatori in squadra. "There are eleven players in the team."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

fine settimana

This is a literal translation from the English "weekend." *Fine* means "end" and *settimana* means "week." Even if *settimana* is feminine (*la settimana*), the word *fine settimana* is masculine (*il fine settimana*). We also use the English word.

For Example:

1. *Che cosa fai questo weekend?*
   "What are you doing this weekend?"

nuoto

This noun comes from the verb *nuotare*. It is also found in words like *lezioni di nuoto* ("swimming lessons") and *istruttore di nuoto* ("swimming instructor"). The word for swimming pool is *piscina.*

programma

Let's remember that even if the word *programma* ends in *-a*, it is masculine (*il programma*).

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Irregular Verbs *Andare*, *Venire*, and *Fare* ("to Go," "to Come," and "to Do").
Sabato mattina vado a vedere una gara di nuoto.
"On Saturday morning, I go watch a swimming competition."

These are three of the most used verbs and are key to start speaking and understanding basic Italian.

Andare ("to Go")

The conjugation of the verb *andare* is as follows:

io vado

tu vai

lui/lei va

noi andiamo

voi andate

loro vanno

Some expressions with the verb *andare* that can be useful are *andare in bicicletta* ("to cycle"), *andare al cinema* ("to go to the cinema"), *andare al mercato* ("to go to the market"), and *andare in piscina* ("to go to the swimming pool").

Also, *andare* can be followed by the preposition *a* plus a verb in the infinitive mode.

For Example:

1. *andare a vedere una gara*
   "to go watch a competition"
2. *andare a sciare*
   "to go skiing"

Venire ("to Come")

The conjugation of the verb *venire* is as follows:

io vengo

tu vieni

lui/lei viene

noi veniamo

voi venite

loro vengono

For Example:

1. *Perchè non vieni con noi?*
   "Why don't you come with us?"
2. *Anche Sara viene alla festa.*
   "Also, Sara comes to the party."
3. *Stasera non vengono a cena.*
   "Tonight they don't come for dinner."

Fare ("to Do")

The conjugation of the verb *fare* is as follows:

io faccio

tu fai

lui/lei fa

noi facciamo

voi fate

loro fanno

For Example:

1. *E domenica cosa fai?*
   "And on Sunday, what do you do?"
2. *Fai sport?*
   "Do you play any sport?"

We often use the verb *fare* with sports.

For Example:

1. *fare yoga*
   "to do yoga"
2. *fare karate*
   "to do karate"
3. *fare aerobica*
   "to do aerobics"
4. *fare pattinnaggio*
   "to skate"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Acqui Terme

Acqui Terme is a small city of Piedmont in northern Italy, in the province of Alessandria. It is one of the principal winemaking towns of the Italians. It is where the sweet and sparkling red wine called *Brachetto d'Acqui* is produced. The hot sulphur springs have been famous ever since this was the Roman town of Aquae Statiellae. The ancient baths are also referred to by Paulus Diaconus, a writer from the Middle Ages. In 1870, Giovanni Cerutti designed a little pavilion, known as *La Bollente*, for the spot at the center of the town where the waters bubble up at 75°C. *Bollente* means "boiling" or "really hot." In the sixth century, it became part of the Lombard kingdom of northern Italy. Acqui was ruled by its bishop from 978, becoming an independent commune in 1135. In 1278, it was annexed to the Marquisate of Montferrat, to which it belonged until the acquisition by the Duchy of Savoy.
Today it is famous for its waters, which are often also used to cure rheumatism.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #4
Making Plans for the Weekend in Italian

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#4

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Domenica ho tutta la giornata libera finalmente!
2. Jack : Allora facciamo qualcosa insieme!
3. Mieke : Vorrei fare un pic nic al parco del Valentino per due o tre ore.
4. Jack : Buona idea. Che tempo fa domenica?
5. Claudio : La mattina è nuvoloso e il pomeriggio piove.
6. Mieke : Peccato... allora, perché non andiamo a una cantina? Un mio amico lavora in una cantina vicino a Torino da due mesi.
7. Claudio : Ok. Partiamo verso mezzogiorno e torniamo la sera.

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : Sunday I have the whole day free finally!
2. Jack : Then let's do something together!
3. Mieke : I'd like to have a picnic at Valentino park for two or three hours.
4. Jack : Good idea. What will the weather be like on Sunday?
5. Claudio : In the morning, it will be cloudy, and in the afternoon it will rain.
6. Mieke : Too bad... Then, why don't we go to a wine bar? A friend of mine has been working in a wine bar near Turin for two months.
7. Claudio : OK. We'll leave around midday and come back in the evening.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
finalmente	finally	adverb	
vicino	near, close	adjective	
libero	free	adjective	
partire	to leave, to start, to take off	verb	
nuvoloso	cloudy	adjective	masculine
tutto	everything, all	adjective	
tempo	weather	noun	masculine
insieme	together	adverb	
piovere	to rain	verb	
tornare	to go back, to come back, to get back	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Finalmente possiamo usare la macchina di papà. "We can finally use dad's car."	Finalmente ho la patente. "I finally have the driving license."
Non è permesso utilizzare fuochi d'artificio vicino agli edifici. "It is not allowed to use fireworks near buildings."	Abitiamo vicino alle poste. "We live near the post office."
Vivo qui vicino. "I live near here."	Giulia, sei libera questa sera? "Julia, are you free this evening?"
Domani partirò per Milano. "I'll leave for Milan tomorrow."	Sono partito alle sei del mattino. "I left at six o'clock a.m."
Domani parto per Roma. "Tomorrow, I am leaving for Rome."	Stamattina è nuvoloso, ma nel pomeriggio c'è il sole. "In the morning it's cloudy, but in the afternoon it's sunny."
È nuvoloso. "It's cloudy."	Trascorro le vacanze con tutta la mia famiglia. "I spend the holidays with all of my family."
È tutta colpa tua! "It's all your fault!"	Prendo tutto. "I'll take everything."
Il tempo è bello oggi. "The weather is nice today."	Questo tempo è orribile. "This weather is horrible."

Quali sono le previsioni del tempo? "What's the weather forecast?"	Come è il tempo a Roma? "What's the weather like in Rome?"
Dormono tutti insieme in una stanza. "They sleep all together in one room."	Facciamo una passeggiata insieme? "Shall we take a walk together?"
In Italia piove spesso in primavera e autunno. "In Italy it often rains in spring and in autumn."	Le previsioni dicono che domani pioverà. "The forecast says tomorrow it'll rain."
Luca torna da scuola verso l'una. "Luke comes back from school about one p.m."	Ieri sono tornato a casa tardi. "Yesterday I got back home late."
Vorrei tornare a S. Gimignano. "I would like to go back to S. Gimignano."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

libero

The adjective *libero* is "free" in the meaning of both available and vacant. We cannot use *libero* the meaning of "no money." That in Italian is *gratis*.

For Example:

1. *Questa pizza e' gratis.*
   "This pizza is free."

tempo

In Italian, the word *tempo* means both "weather" and "time."

For Example:

1. *Che tempo fa?*
   "What's the weather like?"
2. *Non ho tempo*.
   "I have no time."

piovere

The noun that derives from the verb *piovere* is *la pioggia* ("the rain"). Other weather verbs are *nevicare* ("to snow"), *la neve* ("the snow"), *tempestare* ("to hail"), or *la tempesta* ("the hail").

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of the Days of the Week and Some Common Prepositions to Express Time.
Che tempo fa domenica?
"What will the weather be like on Sunday?"

Learning the days of the week as well as the months and seasons later on, together with some prepositions that we use with these nouns, will help you plan things in Italy as well as talk about the weather.

The Days of the Week

Italian	**"English"**
lunedì	"Monday"
martedì	"Tuesday"
mercoledì	"Wednesday"
giovedì	"Thursday"
venerdì	"Friday"
sabato	"Saturday"
domenica	"Sunday"

We do not capitalize days of the week unless at the beginning of the sentence.

Dì means "day." And another way to say *buongiorno* ("good morning") is *buondì*.

For Example:

1. *Che giorno è oggi? E' giovedì.*
   "What day is it today? It's Thursday."

The names of the days of the week come from Roman deities and so every day in associated to a celestial body in the solar system:

Day	*Deity*	"Celestial Body"
lunedì	luna	"moon"
martedì	marte	"Mars"
mercoledì	mercurio	"Mercury"
giovedì	giove	"Jupiter"
venerdì	venere	"Venus"

The origin of *sabato* e *domenica* is different: *sabato* is from the Hebrew word *sabbat* and

domenica comes from *dominus*, which is the day of the lord.

The days of the week are all masculine, and therefore the appropriate article is *il.* The only exception is *domenica*. It is feminine and requires the article *la*.

Days of the week don't require a preposition when referring to the coming day of the week.

For Example:

1. *Che tempo fa domenica?*
   "What's the weather like on Sunday?"

Domenica doesn't require any preposition because in the context of this sentence, the speaker refers to the following Sunday.

To indicate habitual days, we can use a definite article in a singular form:

For Example:

1. *Il lunedì vado al cinema.*
   "I go to the cinema on Mondays."
2. *La domenica incontro la mia famiglia.*
   "I meet my family on Sundays."

For the same purpose, we can add the preposition *di* before the day of the week.

For Example:

1. *Le scuole sono chiuse di domenica.*
   "Schools are closed on Sundays."

Parts of the Day

We add a definite article before a part of the day.

For Example:

1. *La mattina e' nuvoloso e il pomeriggio piove.*
   "In the morning, it is cloudy, and in the afternoon it rains."
2. *La sera vado a dormire verso mezzanotte.*
   "In the evening, I go to bed around midnight."

For the same purpose, we can add the preposition *di* before a part of the day.

For Example:

1. *Di sera vado a dormire verso mezzanotte.*
   "In the evening, I go to bed around midnight."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

La Produzione Di Vino in Italia ("Wine Production In Italy")

Italy is one of the main wine producers in the world, with its 40 million hectoliters. However, recently, the consumption of wine in Italy has decreased. Still, Italians rank fifth on the world wine consumption list by volume, with consumption of forty-two liters per capita. Grapes are grown in almost every region of the country, and there are more than one million vineyards under cultivation. Most of the wine comes from Tuscany, Piedmont, Puglia, Emilia Romagna, Veneto, and Friuli, where the cultivation is intensive. In the past few years, some wine-producing companies have focused more and more in producing more DOC wines. DOC stands for *denominazione di origine controllata* and refers to specific zones of cultivation where only permitted grapes are used. The DOC system began in 1963, trying to establish a method of both recognizing quality products and maintaining the international and national reputation of certain products. Some of the most renowned and DOC wines are Brunello, Barbera, Malvasia, Bonarda, Tocai, Lambrusco.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #5
Which Italian Wine Should You Buy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#5

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Claudio : Vorrei una bottiglia per la mia famiglia. Mia madre ama il vino rosso del Piemonte. Jack, cosa consigli?
2. Jack : Questo è un buon vino, a base di Nebbiolo. Ma... ah sta arrivando il sommelier.
3. Claudio : Scusi, vorrei comprare una bottiglia per mia madre. Lei ama il vino fruttato. Che cosa mi consiglia?
4. Sommelier : Desidera un vino a buon prezzo?
5. Claudio : Beh.. sì..
6. Sommelier : Allora, va bene il Vigne Combe Valsusa. È un affare.
7. Claudio : La ringrazio.

ENGLISH

1. Claudio : I'd like a bottle for my family. My mother loves red wine from Piedmont. Jack, what do you recommend?
2. Jack : This is a good wine, based on Nebbiolo. But...the sommelier is coming...
3. Claudio : Excuse me, I'd like to buy a bottle for my mother. She loves fruity wine. What do you recommend?
4. Sommelier : Would you like a wine at a good price?
5. Claudio : Well...yes.
6. Sommelier : Then, the Vigne Combe Valsusa is good. It's a bargain.
7. Claudio : Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
madre	mother	noun	feminine
prezzo	price, cost, rate, tariff	noun	
famiglia	family	noun	feminine
affare	bargain	noun	
fruttato	fruity	adjective	
bottiglia	bottle	noun	feminine
comprare	to buy, to purchase	verb	
consigliare	to suggest, to advise	verb	
desiderare	to wish, to want, to long for, to desire	verb	
ringraziare	to thank	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Mia madre e mio padre sono stati sposati cinquant'anni. My mother and father were married fifty (50) years.	I bambini stanno baciando la loro mamma. The children are kissing their mother.
Mia madre è spagnola. "My mother is Spanish."	Tua madre cucina molto bene. "Your mother cooks very well."
Tutte queste camicie sono a buon prezzo. "All these shirts are at good price."	Il prezzo è un po' alto. "The price is a little high."
La famiglia sta cenando. The family is eating dinner.	La famiglia sta sorridendo per la foto. The family is smiling for the picture.
foto di famiglia family picture	La famiglia sta pranzando. The family is having lunch.
famiglia contenta happy family	La mia famiglia è originaria del Meridione. "My family comes from southern Italy."
Luca ha una famiglia numerosa. "Luca has a large family."	Guardi questa Golf! E' un affare! "Look at this Golf! It's a bargain!"
Ti consiglio un vino fruttato per questa torta. "I recommend a fruity wine for this cake."	Questo vino della Puglia ha un sapore fruttato. "This wine from Puglia has a fruity taste."

Hanno finito cinquanta bottiglie di birra in una sera. "They finished fifty bottles of beer in one night."	Questa è una bottiglia di vino speciale! "This is a first-class bottle of wine!"
Una bottiglia di vino. "A bottle of wine."	Comprerà una casa di fianco al fiume per il suo cane. "He will buy a house next to the river for his dog."
Compro sempre troppo cibo, quando ho fame. "I always buy too many groceries when I am hungry."	Vorrei comprare questo anello per la mia ragazza. "I'd like to buy this ring for my girlfriend."
Ho comprato della verdura e della carne per la cena di stasera. "I bought some vegetables and some meat for tonight's dinner."	Tu compri il pane. "You buy the bread."
Ti consiglio di guardare quel film. "I suggest you watch that movie."	Che vino mi consigli con questo dolce? "What kind of wine do you recommend with this dessert?"
Non ti consiglio di prendere quella strada. "I wouldn't advise you take that road."	Ti consiglio di guardare quel film. "I suggest you watch that movie."
Desidera una macchina veloce o comoda? "Would you like a fast or comfortable car?"	Cosa desideri per Natale? "What do you wish for Christmas?"
Desidera altro? "Would you like something else?"	Vi ringraziamo per il vostro aiuto. "We thank you for your help."
Ti ringrazio del tuo aiuto. Di nulla. "Thanks for you help. No problem."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

***fruttato* ("fruity")**

This adjective comes from the noun *frutta. Frutta* is an uncountable noun, and it is feminine: *la frutta.*

***desiderare* ("to wish")**

We translate this as "to wish." But we can also use it in stores to place our orders, similar to "would like."

***prezzo* ("price")**

When asking about price, the most natural question is *Quanto costa?*, but it is OK to say also *Qual è il prezzo di....?*

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Expressing Levels of Formality.
Desidera un vino a buon prezzo?
"Would you like a wine at a good price?"

To express formality in Italian, we use the third-person singular. This applies to verbs as well as adjectives and pronouns. *Lei* is the subject pronoun that we use.

For Example:

1. *Lei è il signor Rossi?*
   "Are you Mr. Rossi?"

To distinguish it from *lei,* the feminine subject pronoun meaning "she," we always capitalize *Lei*.

For Example:

1. *Buongiorno a Lei!*
   "Good morning to you!"

The verb is always in the third-person singular. Notice the difference in the usage of the second (informal) and third (formal) person in the conversation of this lesson.

When Claudio talks to Jack, a friend, he says *Che cosa mi consigli?* ("What do you recommend?")

But when Claudio talks to the sommelier, someone he does not know, he says *Che cosa mi consiglia?* (*"*What do you recommend?")

In Italian, it is very important to use the third person in formal situations and to be polite. Italians consider it very rude to address to a person using the second-person singular in a formal situation. The third-person singular is appropriate when you address a person you don't know well or if you talk to this person for the first time. We also use it to address elderly people and in general people older than you. It is common to use the third-person singular when talking to doctors, teachers, and professors at school and universities, the mayor, the police, and in shops.

Together with the third-person singular, it is important to use greetings and titles appropriately.

For Example:

1. *Ciao dottore, come sta?*
   "Hi, doctor, how are you?"

This sentence is incorrect because it uses *ciao*, a very informal greeting, and *come sta,* formal speech. Here is the correct sentence.

For Example:

1. *Buongiorno (or Salve) dottore, come sta?*
   "Good morning, doctor, how are you?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Enoteca Regionale Emilia Romagna

In Emilia-Romagna, a region with a strong wine vocation, near Bologna in a hilly village called Dozza, there is a big *enoteca*, a "wine house," that since 1978 has promoted and tried to improve the regional production of wine in Italy and in the world. The *Enoteca Regionale Emilia Romagna* has a picturesque location, just inside a medieval castle, the Sforza Castle of Dozza. Dozza itself is a very striking place, with its houses' walls all painted by various famous artists. The *Enoteca* is open to everyone, and it is the best place to find, taste, and buy good wines and vinegars from the region. One of the most famous Emilia-Romagna's wine is Lambrusco, a red and fruity sparkling wine that was also beloved by the opera singer Pavarotti and today is among the most exported wines in Italy. Closely related to Lambrusco, there is the traditional balsamic vinegar of Modena, a special vinegar that needs years of fermentation before becoming a thick and rare seasoning, defined by a sweet and strong taste.

Cantina Canelli

In an area with a strong wine vocation, between the *Langhe* and *Monferrato* ("Piedmont"), the *cantina Sociale di Canelli* ("Canelli cooperative Wine Growers' Association") has been producing the classic wines of Piedmont since 1933, working with absolute respect for the tradition. Today, the *Cantina sociale di Canelli* produces more than 200 wines. The wide assortment of products includes the most prestigious wines of the Asti area: reds obtained from the grapes of old vines; light, fresh and fruity whites; and sweet and dry *Spumanti*. *Spumante* is the Italian equivalent of French champagne, and it is common to drink *spumante* to celebrate special occasions like New Year's Eve or Christmas and birthdays (together with a piece of cake!). The buildings of the *Cantina* stretch over more than 2,000 square meters, and it is here that the various production phases take place until the final product is obtained.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #6

What's Your Favorite Italian Cooking Show?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#6

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Claudio : Jack, vorrei guardare il programma di cucina della Parodi. È sul canale 7.
2. Jack : Guardi anche tu i programmi di cucina?
3. Claudio : Sono utili. Imparo sempre ricette nuove.
4. Jack : Sono d’accordo. E preferisco un programma di cucina a un varietà! i varietà sono noiosi.
5. Claudio : Hai ragione. Quale programma culinario preferisci?
6. Jack : Preferisco guardare il programma della Clerici, è molto divertente.

ENGLISH

1. Claudio : Jack, I'd like to watch Parodi's cooking program. It's on channel seven.
2. Jack : You watch cooking programs too?
3. Claudio : They are useful. I always learn new recipes.
4. Jack : I agree. And I prefer cooking programs to variety shows. They are boring!
5. Claudio : You're right. And what cooking programs do you prefer?
6. Jack : I prefer watching Clerici's program; it's very entertaining.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
cucina	kitchen, cooking, food, cuisine	noun	feminine
varietà	variety show	noun	feminine
programma	program, show, plan	noun	
noioso	boring, tiresome, dull	adjective	
ricetta	recipe, prescription	noun	feminine
guardare	to look, to watch, to look at	verb	
imparare	to learn	verb	
canale	channel	noun	masculine
essere d'accordo	to agree	phrase	
divertente	funny, fun, amusing	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La cucina è la mia stanza preferita. "The kitchen is my favourite room."	Ti piace la cucina italiana? "Do you like Italian cooking?"
Cosa ti piace della cucina italiana? "What do you like about Italian cuisine?"	Mi piace la cucina tailandese. "I like Thai food."
Talvolta guardo programmi di varietà per rilassarmi. "I sometimes watch variety shows to relax."	Quale programma stai guardando ora? Il telegiornale? "What program are you watching now? The news?"
Che programmi hai per domani? "What are your plans for tomorrow?"	Questo talk show è troppo noioso! "This talk show is too boring!"
Questo programma televisivo è noioso. "This TV program is boring."	Nella mia cucina ho tanti libri di ricette. "In my kitchen I have a lot of recipe books."
Ho provato questa nuova ricetta. "I tried this new recipe."	Guardami mentre parlo. "Look at me when I'm talking to you."
Di solito non guardo nessuno sport, ma ieri ho fatto un'eccezione. "Usually, I don't watch any sports but I made an exception yesterday."	La domenica molti italiani guardano il calcio in TV. "On Sunday a lot of Italian people watch soccer on TV."
Guardi la tv? "Are you watching TV?"	Guardiamo un film italiano? "Shall we watch an Italian movie?"
Giorno per giorno, Samuele impara cose nuove. "Day by day Sam learns new things."	Cosa hai imparato oggi? "What did you learn today?"
cambiare canale change the channel	Sta cambiando canale con un telecomando. She is changing the channel with the remote control.
Puoi cambiare canale? Non mi piace questo film dell'orrore. "Can you change channel? I don't like this horror film."	Lo sport fa sempre bene alla salute.Sei d'accordo? "Sport is always good for one's health. Do you agree?"
Non sono d'accordo con te. "I do not agree with you."	Penso che il film fosse veramente divertente. "I think that the movie was really fun."

Gli spettacoli di Crozza sono sempre divertenti. "Crozza's shows are always entertaining."	Il film che abbiamo visto ieri sera è stato davvero divertente. "The movie we saw last night was really funny."
È divertente giocare a calcio. "It's fun to play soccer."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

programma

This noun ends in *-a* but it is a masculine noun: *il programma.* It both means "a plan" or "a program" (e.g., a TV program or program for the theater).

cucina

Cucina is a noun that translates to both the "kitchen" in a house and the word "cuisine" or "cooking."

essere d'accordo

This is a popular expression used to show agreement. The verb *essere* follows its conjugation, while *d'accordo* is invariable.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of the Verb *Preferire.*
Quale programma culinario preferisci?
"Which cooking program do you prefer?"

We often use the verb *preferire* to express likes and dislikes as well as preferences. It is a verb belonging to the *-ire* group, but its conjugation is different from the majority of the verbs ending in *-ire*.

Here is the conjugation of *preferire*:

Io preferisco

Tu preferisci

Lui/lei preferisce

Noi preferiamo

Voi preferite

Loro preferiscono

The verb *preferire* adds the suffix *-isc* between the root and the declination to the first-, second-, and third-person singular and to the third-person plural.

There are other verbs belonging to the *-ire* group that have a similar conjugation to *preferire*.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
finire	"to finish"
capire	"to understand"
pulire	"to clean"

When you see a new verb in *-ire*, it is necessary to check the dictionary in order to know whether its conjugation is similar to the verb *dormire* or the verb *preferire.*

Let's see the conjugation of these verbs one more time using the verb *capire.*

Io capisco

Tu capisci

Lui/lei capisce

Noi capiamo

Voi capite

Loro capiscono

For Example:

1. *Capisci cosa dico?*
   "Do you understand what I say?"
2. *Giovanni pulisce la macchina.*
   "Giovanni cleans the car."
3. *Sara e Simona finiscono il lavoro alle 7:00.*
   "Sara and Simona finish work at seven o'clock."

Preferire can be followed by a verb in the infinitive form. No preposition is needed between *preferire* and the verb.

For Example:

1. *Preferisco guardare il programma della Clerici.*
   "I prefer watching Clerici's program."

Preferire can be followed by a noun, and we can use it to compare two things. In this case, we need to use the preposition *a*.

For Example:

1. *E preferisco un programma di cucina a un varietà!*
   "I prefer a cooking program to a variety show."
2. *Preferisce la cucina giapponese alla cucina messicana.*
   "He prefers Japanese cuisine to Mexican cuisine."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

La Prova del Cuoco

La Prova del Cuoco is a famous cooking show on Italian TV. On numerous Italian TV channels, there are often cooking programs in which more or less famous chefs show and explain how to prepare their favorite dishes. However, one of the most successful programs is broadcast at midday (what timing!), and it is hosted by Ms. Antonella Clerici, a famous friendly host on Italian TV. She first prepares a dish for her guests, and then there is a cooking competition between two chefs. They have to prepare a dish in about fifteen minutes. A special jury chooses the winner. This competition is also often a good occasion to present regional dishes and ingredients from different parts of Italy.
Another cooking show on TV is hosted by Benedetta Parodi, who is also famous for her cookbook, *Cotto e mangiato* (literally, "cooked and eaten"): a book containing everyday recipes that are easy to prepare.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #7

Which Food Do You Miss the Most in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

7

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Che sorpresa! Oggi non mangi in mensa? Allora mangi un panino con me?
2. Jack : Volentieri! Non vedo l'ora di mangiare. Oggi ho un pasto speciale: corn beef hash. Mi piace tantissimo.
3. Mieke : Che cos'è?
4. Jack : Un misto di patate e carne di manzo in scatola. È da parte di mia mamma. A volte ho nostalgia di questo cibo! Vuoi assaggiare?
5. Mieke : Hai nostalgia di questo cibo? Davvero?! No grazie.. non mi piace il cibo in scatola...

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : What a surprise! Today you don't eat at the canteen? Would you like a sandwich with me?
2. Jack : I can't wait to eat. Today I have a special meal...corn beef hash. I really like it.
3. Mieke : What is it?
4. Jack : A mixture of potato and beef in a can. It's from my mom. I sometimes miss this food. Do you want to try it?
5. Mieke : You miss this food? Really? No thank you...I don't like canned food...

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
non vedere l'ora di	cannot wait to	verbal phrase	
cibo	food	noun	masculine
mensa	canteen, refectory, lunchroom	noun	feminine
assaggiare	to taste, to sample, to nibble	verb	
lattina	can	noun	feminine
sorpresa	surprise	noun	
speciale	special	adjective	masculine
pasto	meal	noun	masculine
a volte	sometimes	frequency adverb	
davvero	really, truly, indeed	adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Mio figlio non vede l’ora di incontrare Sonia. "My son can’t wait to meeting Sonia."	Amo il cibo biologico. "I love organic food."
Mangio spesso cibo cinese. "I often eat Chinese food."	Da oggi c’è una nuova cuoca in mensa. "From today there is a new cook at the canteen."
Quando lavoro mangio sempre alla mensa. "When I work, I always eat at the canteen."	Assaggia la pasta. E’cotta? "Try the pasta. Is it cooked?"
Assaggia quello che ho cucinato per te! "Taste what I've cooked for you!"	Colleziono lattine degli anni 70. "I collect cans from the 70s'."
Mi puoi comprare una Coca Cola in lattina? "Can you buy me a Coca Cola in a can?"	C’è una piacevole sorpresa per te. "There is a pleasant surprise for you."
Non mi piacciono le sorprese. "I don't like surprises."	Ho fatto una sorpresa alla mia ragazza. "I surprised my girlfriend."
C'è uno speciale sulla scuola. "There's a special about school."	Oggi e’ un giorno speciale per tutti noi. "Today it is a special day for all of us."
È un'offerta speciale. "It's a special offer."	pasto di cinque portate five course meal
pasto caldo hot meal	pasto cucinato in casa home cooked meal
Lo chef sta preparando un pasto. The chef is making a meal.	La colazione è il pasto più importante della giornata. "Breakfast is the most important meal of the day."
Di solito alla sera faccio un pasto leggero. "In the evening I usually have a light meal."	Consumare il pasto. Consume the meal.
A volte mangio la pizza per cena. "I sometimes eat pizza for dinner."	A volte non ti capisco Marco. "Sometimes I don't understand you, Marco."
Sei davvero vegetariano? "Are you really vegetarian?"	Devo davvero andare. "I really have to go."
Davvero? "Really?"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

pasto

Pasto means "meal." To say "to have a meal" is *fare un pasto*. However, to say "to have lunch or dinner," it is preferable to use the verbs *pranzare* and *cenare.*

a volte

A volte means "sometimes." Other expressions are *qualche volta, certe volte,* and *talvolta.* The position of this adverb in the sentence is not fixed, but it is often at the beginning of the sentence or near the verb.

davvero

Davvero is a very common expression to show surprise. It comes from the adjective *vero* ("true"). A similar expression is *Per davvero*?

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Verb *Piacere.*
Mi piace tantissimo.
"I really like it."

We use the verb *piacere* to express that you like something. In the negative form, it expresses a dislike.

For Example:

1. *Mi piace la torta al cioccolato*
   "I like chocolate cake."
2. *Non mi piace il cibo in scatola.*
   "I don't like can food."

The verb *piacere* works a little bit differently from other verbs in Italian. Look at the chart below:

mi piace ("i like")

ti piace ("you like")

gli piace ("he likes")

le piace ("she likes")

ci piace ("we like")

vi piace ("you like")

gli piace ("they like")

As you can see, we do not conjugate *piacere* in six forms. This is because the subject of the verb *piacere* is not the person who likes something (like in English) but the subject the object being liked. An example will make the explanation clear.

For Example:

1. *Mi piace la pasta.*
   "I like pasta."

The subject of the sentence is "pasta," not "I." *Mi* is an indirect pronoun, and it means "to me." So, a literal translation of *Mi piace la pasta* would be "Pasta likes to me." In order to express who likes something, we use indirect pronouns.

The indirect pronouns are as follows:

Subject Pronouns	Indirect Pronouns
io	*mi*
tu	*ti*
lui	*gli*
lei	*le*
noi	*ci*
voi	*vi*
loro	*gli*

You will learn more about indirect pronouns later on. For now, it is best to memorize them and remember that we place them before the verb *piacere.*

For Example:

1. *Gli piace il calcio.*
   "He likes football."

If the sentence is negative, we place the indirect pronoun between *non* and the verb *piacere.*

For Example:

1. *Non le piace la neve.*
   "She doesn't like rain."

It is also possible to substitute the indirect pronoun with the preposition *a* + the name of the person who likes something.

For Example:

1. *A Luisa piace il calcio.*
   "Luisa likes football."

In order to express how much a person likes or dislikes something, we can add an adverb of quantity.

For Example:

1. *Mi piace tantissimo Roma.*
   "I really like Rome."
2. *Mi piace abbastanza il cinema italiano*.
   "I quite like Italian movies."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Cibo e Persone ("Food and People")

Food is an important part of Italian culture. It is not only a stereotype that Italian people love food. It could be said that Italian people find in food a part of their cultural identity. That is also because of Italian history, which is not only long but also varied. After the Roman Age, every region in Italy went through different experiences because they were dominated by various foreign countries. This also affected the cooking tradition of every region. For example in the South of Italy, especially in Sicily, where the Arabs ruled for a while during the Middle Ages, you can find many traces still today: cous-cous, a traditional Berber dish of semolina, or many dishes with sesame. Both cous-cous and sesame are almost unknown ingredients in the traditional cooking tradition of Northern Italy, where for example we can find the Austrian influence in the *canederli* recipe, bread dumplings with soup. This multiplicity is often celebrated in fairs or events dedicated to food.
In the Italian language, there are a few expressions that we use to describe people's character and look that require a similitude with food. It might be because Italians love their food or because they are always thinking about food. Here are some of the most common expressions.
For Example:

1. *buono come il pane*
   "good like bread"
2. *buono come il vino*
   "good like wine"

The two expressions above describe people who are good-hearted, generous, and kind.
For Example:

1. *dolce come il miele*
   "sweet like honey"
2. *pieno come un uovo*
   "full like an egg" (This does not refer only to a full stomach. It can also describe people who have lots of things.)

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #8
Will Italy Win This Volleyball Game?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#8

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Silvia : Questa partita è deludente!
2. Mieke : La squadra italiana di pallavolo femminile di solito è la numero uno, ma oggi non è in forma.
3. Silvia : Che peccato! Di solito siamo più forti.
4. Mieke : Invece oggi l'Italia sta perdendo anche il secondo set.
5. Silvia : Che tristezza! Speriamo di recuperare quattro punti altrimenti non andiamo in finale.
6. Mieke : Temo che l'Italia oggi non vincerà.

ENGLISH

1. Silvia : This match is disappointing!
2. Mieke : The Italian women's volleyball team is usually number one, but today it's not in shape.
3. Silvia : What a pity! Usually we are stronger.
4. Mieke : While today, Italy is even losing the second set.
5. Silvia : How sad! I hope we make up at four points, otherwise we can't go to the final.
6. Mieke : I fear that Italy won't win today.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
squadra	team	noun	feminine
perdere	to lose, to waste, to miss	verb	
deludente	disappointing	adjective	
che tristezza!	How sad!	exclamation	
che peccato!	What a pity!	exclamation (idiomatic expression)	
partita	match, game	noun	
in forma	in shape	adverb	
pallavolo	volleyball	noun	feminine
forte	strong, powerful, loud, tough, heavy, severe	adjective	
sperare	to hope	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La sua squadra di calcio preferita è Dallas Cowboys. Her favorite team is the Dallas Cowboys football team.	gioco di squadra team game
sforzo di squadra team effort	La squadra sta discutendo. The team is having a discussion.
Squadra, siete pronti? Mani al centro! Okay team, hands in.	Lascerà la squadra il prossimo anno. "She'll quit the team next year."
Andiamo a vedere la squadra americana di basket! "Let’s go and see the American team of basketball!"	Qual è la tua squadra preferita? "What’s your favorite team?"
Ci sono undici giocatori in squadra. "There are eleven players in the team."	Forza ragazzi! Stiamo perdendo la partita. "Come on, boys! We are losing the match."
Ho perso il portafogli. "I lost my wallet."	Abbiamo perso la partita. "We lost the match."
Questo film è davvero deludente! "This film is really disappointing!"	Che tristezza! Non c’è nessuno alla festa. "How sad! There’s nobody at the party."

Che peccato! Susy è ammalata. "What a pity! Susy is ill."	Ieri ho perso il treno. Che peccato! "Yesterday I missed the train. What a pity!"
Che peccato! "What a pity!"	Quasi nessuno ha potuto guardare la partita a causa dell'interruzione di corrente. "Hardly anyone could watch the game due to a power cut."
Italia-Germania è una partita emozionante. "Italy-Germany is an exciting match."	Facciamo una partita? "Shall we play a match?"
Oggi mi sento proprio in forma per la gara di nuoto. "Today I really feel in shape for the swimming race."	giocare a pallavolo play volleyball
Le squadre stanno giocando a pallavolo. The teams are playing volleyball.	Giochiamo a pallavolo in spiaggia. Let's play volleyball at the beach.
Lucia e Maria giocano a pallavolo due volte la settimana. "Lucy and Mary play volleyball twice a week."	Di solito si gioca a pallavolo durante educazione fisica a scuola. "Volleyball is usually played at school during physical education class."
Le ragazze giocano sempre a pallavolo. "The girls always play volleyball."	Wow, è proprio forte! Wow, that's super cool!
Jack è un uomo forte e gioca in una squadra di rugby. "Jack is a strong man and he plays in a rugby team."	Tuo padre è molto forte. "Your father is very strong."
Spero di ricevere un bel regalo per il mio compleanno. "I hope to receive a nice present for my birthday."	Spero che Luisa arrivi in tempo. "I hope that Luisa will arrive on time."
Speriamo che la crisi economica finisca presto. "Let's hope that the economic crisis finishes soon."	Spero che domani non piova. "I hope it won't rain tomorrow."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

deludente

Deludente is the adjective from the verb *deludere* ("to disappoint"). To express disappointment, it is also possible to use the noun *delusion* ("disappointment") in the expression *essere una delusione.*

che peccato!

This expression is very common and very much used to show disappointment.

perdere

We use *perdere* ("to lose") when talking about a match (opposite of "to win"), "to lose [something]" (opposite of *trovare* ("to find")), and also "to miss," such as in *perdere il treno* ("to miss the train").

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Cardinal Numbers.
La squadra italiana di pallavolo femminile di solito è la numero uno.
"The Italian team of women volleyball is usually number one."

Cardinal numbers are useful to express time, record dates, interpret recipe amounts, and, of course, count. In Italian, we write cardinal numbers as one word.

Here is the basic table of numbers.

Number	*Italian*
1	*uno*
2	*due*
3	*tre*
4	*quattro*
5	*cinque*
6	*sei*
7	*sette*
8	*otto*
9	*nove*
10	*dieci*
11	*undici*
12	*dodici*
13	*tredici*
14	*quattordici*
15	*quindici*
16	*sedici*
17	*diciassette*
18	*diciotto*
19	*diciannove*
20	*venti*
21	*ventuno*
22	*ventidue*
23	*ventitré*
24	*ventiquattro*
25	*venticinque*
26	*ventisei*
27	*ventisette*
28	*ventotto*
29	*ventinove*
30	*trenta*
31	*trentuno*
32	*trentadue*
33	*trentatré*
40	*quaranta*

50	*cinquanta*
60	*sessanta*
70	*settanta*
80	*ottanta*
90	*novanta*
100	*cento*

When -*tre* is the last digit of a larger number, it takes an accent: *ventitré*, *trentatré*, *quarantatré*, and so on.

The numbers *venti*, *trenta*, and so on drop the final vowel before adding -*uno* or -*otto*: *ventuno*, *ventotto*.

Beyond 100

There is no Italian equivalent for the English "eleven hundred," "twelve hundred," etc. One says *millecento*, *milleduecento*, etc.

The function of periods and commas is reversed from that in English. Therefore, the number 1.000 = "one thousand" (or *mille* in Italian) and 1,5 = "one point five" or "one and five tenths" or, in Italian, *uno virgola cinque.*

We do not use the indefinite article before *cento* and *mille*, but we do use it before *million.*

For Example:

1. *cento anni*
   "a hundred years"
2. *mille favole*
   "a thousand fables"
3. *un millione di lire*
   "a million lire"

Here is a table of cardinal numbers after 100.

Number	*Italian*
100	*cento*
101	*centouno*
150	*centocinquanta*
200	*duecento*
300	*trecento*
400	*quattrocento*
500	*cinquecento*
600	*seicento*
700	*settecento*
800	*ottocento*
900	*novecento*
1,000	*mille*
1,001	*milleuno*
1,200	*milleduecento*
2,000	*duemila*
10,000	*diecimila*
15,000	*quindicimila*
100,000	*centomila*
1,000,000	*un milione*
2,000,000	*due milioni*
1,000,000,000	*un miliardo*
2,000,000,000	*due miliardi*

Cardinal numbers do not agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify.

For Example:

1. *Compro due sedie e tre tavoli.*
   "I buy two chairs and three tables."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

La Nazionale di Pallavolo Femminile ("Italian Women's Volleyball Team")

The Italian women's volleyball team is a European volleyball team with the best Italian players. The first volleyball team played against France on April 7, 1951. Unfortunately, the team lost its first match. For the next two decades, the team was anonymous, but in the seventies, the Italian team made it to the European Cup and in 1978 to the World Cup, even if it got the fourth-to-last position.

The Italian team got stronger after the year 2000, and 2007 was the best year for the national team: bronze at the World Grand Prix and twenty-six victories in various cups. These results were possible thanks to a united team led by Italians Eleonora Lo Bianco and Simona Gioli and by the Italian-Cuban Taismary Aguero.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #9
Who is That Pretty Italian Girl?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar

#9

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Stasera viene anche Silvia.
2. Jack : Chi?
3. Mieke : Non conosci Silvia? Lavora con me in pasticceria. A volte prende l'aperitivo con me al bar.
4. Jack : Mhmm...com'è?
5. Mieke : E' abbastanza alta, con i capelli corti, neri e ricci. Ha gli occhi azzurri.
6. Jack : Ah...allora è carina!

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : Silvia is also coming tonight.
2. Jack : Who?
3. Mieke : You don't know Silvia? She works with me at the patisserie. She sometimes has aperitivo at the bar with me.
4. Jack : Mhmm...how is she?
5. Mieke : She is quite tall, with short black curly hair. She has blue eyes.
6. Jack : Ah...she is pretty!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
abbastanza	quite	phrase	
occhio	eye	noun	masculine
chi	who	pronoun	
azzurro	blue	adjective	
corto	short	adjective	
stasera	tonight	noun	
capello	hair	noun	masculine
alto	tall	adjective	masculine
nero	black	adjective	masculine
carino	cute	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Il vino è abbastanza caro in questo ristorante. "The wine is quite expensive in this restaurant."	Sì, ho abbastanza fame. "Yes, I'm quite hungry."
Mia moglie ha gli occhi blu. My wife has blue eyes.	Mia moglie ha gli occhi azzurri. My wife has blue eyes.
I miei occhi sono iniettati di sangue. My eyes are bloodshot.	occhio marrone brown eye
Adoro gli occhi verdi. "I love green eyes."	I tuoi occhi sono marroni, i miei occhi neri. "Your eyes are brown, my eyes black."
Mi è entrato qualcosa in un occhio. "I have something in my eye."	Chi viene a cena domani sera? Who is coming to dinner tomorrow night?
con chi with who	Chi è lui? "Who is he?"
Di chi è questo? "Whose is this?"	Chi vuole un gelato? "Who wants an icecream?"
Chi ha mangiato la mia torta? "Who ate my cake?"	Chi semina vento raccoglie tempesta. "Making your bed and having to sleep in it."
Chi è Marta? "Who is Marta?"	Oggi l'acqua è limpida e azzurra: facciamo il bagno! "Today the water is limpid and blue: let's go swimming!"
Quella gonna è corta. That skirt is short.	Il padre è alto, ma il figlio è basso The father is tall, but the son is short.
basso e alto short and tall	Mia sorella indossa gonne molto corte. "My sister wears very short skirts."
Quella gonna è corta. "That skirt is short."	Ci vediamo stasera per cena! "See you tonight for dinner!"
Stasera usciamo? "Shall we go out tonight?"	Possiamo uscire insieme stasera? "Can we go out together tonight?"

Stasera usciamo? "Shall we go out tonight?"	Non mi piacciono i capelli lunghi. "I don’t like long hair."
Mio fratello è molto alto. "My brother is really tall."	Ci sono molte persone alte in quell'ufficio. "There are many tall people in that office."
Hai solo otto anni? Sei molto alta. "Are you only eight years old? You’re very tall."	Quanto sei alto? "How tall are you?"
corvo nero black crow	Il colore nero non emette o riflette la luce. The color black doesn't emit or reflect light.
bianco e nero black and white	Il colore nero non emette né riflette la luce. The color black doesn't emit or reflect light.
Il nero è il colore del lutto. "Black is the color of mourning."	Io non ho vestiti neri. "I don't have black clothes."
Voglio comprare un paio di scarpe nere. "I want to buy a pair of black shoes."	I gatti neri non portano sfortuna. "Black cats don't bring bad luck."
Paola, hai una cugina molto carina! "Paola, you have a very pretty cousin!"	Ho visto un vestito molto carino, voglio comprarlo! "I saw a very cute dress, I want to buy it."
Il tuo gatto è così carino! "Your cat is so cute!"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

stasera

This is the short form of *questa sera* ("this evening"). All the other expressions for different parts of the day cannot be shortened to one word.

abbastanza

This adverb of quantity can mean both "quite" and "enough" when we use it in negative sentences.

carino

This adjective is very common, and we can use it for people as well as animals or objects. It can be an alternative to the adjective *bello* ("beautiful," "good-looking," or

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of Descriptive Adjectives.
E' abbastanza alta, con i capelli corti, neri e ricci.
"She is quite tall, with short black curly hair."

We usually place Italian descriptive adjectives after the noun they modify, while in English, we always place them before the noun.

For Example:

1. *Sara ha gli occhi azzurri.*
   "Sara has blue eyes."

Adjectives are divided into two groups: those ending in *-o* and those ending in *-e*.

For Example:

Ending in *-o*

Italian	**"English"**
piccolo	"small"
carino	"pretty," "cute"
nero	"black"
buono	"good," "tasty"

Ending in *-e*

Italian	**"English"**
grande	"big"
divertente	"funny"
socievole	"outgoing"

They always agree in gender and number. In this lesson, we will focus on adjectives that refer to singular nouns.

The adjectives can refer to masculine and feminine nouns. Here is a table showing how to make adjectives ending in *-o* agree with singular nouns.

Masculine Singular	***Feminine Singular***
-o	*-a*

For Example:

1. *Ho un gatto bianc**o**.*
   "I have a white cat."
2. *Ho una casa bianc**a**.*
   "I have a white house."

Gatto is a masculine singular noun; therefore, the adjective will end in *-o*.

Casa is a feminine singular noun; therefore, the adjective will end in *-a*.

Here is a table showing how to make adjectives ending in *-e* agree with singular nouns.

Masculine Singular	***Feminine Singular***
-e	*-e*

For Example:

1. *Sara ha un cuore grand**e**.*
   "Sara has a big heart."
2. *Shinjuku è una grand**e** stazione di Tokyo.*
   "Shinjuku is a big station in Tokyo."

Cuore is a masculine singular noun; therefore, the adjective *grande* will end in *-e*.

Stazione is a feminine singular noun; therefore, the adjective *grande* will end in *-e*.

Be aware that the ending of the nouns does not always match. They can match only when the noun and the adjective belong to the same group: both ending in *-o* or both ending in *-e*.

In the examples above, *gatto* is an *-o* ending noun, and *bianco* is an *-o* ending adjective.

Look at the following sentences.

For Example:

1. *Cremona ha una piccol**a** stazion**e**.*
   "Cremona has a small station."

Piccolo is an -*o* ending adjective, while *stazione* is a feminine noun with an -*e* ending.

For Example:

1. *Maria è una ragazz**a** socievol**e**.*
   "Mary is an outgoing girl."

Socievole is an -*e* ending adjective, while *ragazza* is a feminine noun ending in -*o.*

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #10
Describing People in Italian

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#10

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Jack : E che carattere ha Silvia?
2. Mieke : È molto simpatica. Al lavoro è molto gentile e paziente con me. Quando sono in difficoltà mi aiuta sempre. Ha anche una sorella gemella, Serena. Hanno un carattere molto simile-sono molto socievoli ed espansive. I loro fratelli invece sono molto timidi.
3. Jack : Sì, mi ricordo.
4. Mieke : Veramente? li hai visti solo una volta, più di due anni fa. Hai una memoria da elefante!

ENGLISH

1. Jack : And what personality does she have?
2. Mieke : She is very nice. At work, she is very kind and patient with me. When I'm in trouble, she always helps me. She also has a twin sister, Serena. They have similar personalities...they are very friendly and outgoing. Their brothers, on the other hand, are very shy.
3. Jack : Yes, I remember!
4. Mieke : Really? You met them only once, more than two years ago. You have a memory like an elephant!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
gentile	kind, nice, polite	adjective	
espansivo	outgoing	adjective	
simpatico	nice, funny, likable	adjective	
fratello	brother	noun	masculine
simile	similar, alike	adjective	
carattere	personality	noun	masculine
gemello	twin	adverb	
paziente	patient	adjective	masculine
socievole	sociable, social, genial	adjective	
timido	shy	adjective	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

I miei colleghi di scuola sono molto gentili con me. "My school colleagues are very kind to me. "	Grazie! Sei davvero gentile. "Thank you! You are very kind."
È molto gentile da parte tua. "That's very kind of you."	Sara e Marco sono espansivi e parlano con tutti. "Sara and Marco are outgoing and talk to everyone."
Ho una zia molto simpatica e spesso racconta barzellette. "I have a nice aunt and she often tells jokes."	Tuo padre è molto simpatico. "Your father is very nice."
Ora i miei fratelli abitano tutti all'estero. "Now all my brothers live abroad."	Tuo fratello è giovane. "Your brother is young."
Paolo e Andrea sono sempre insieme: hanno un carattere molto simile. "Paolo and Andrea are always together: they have a similar personality."	Le grandi menti pensano in modo simile. "Great minds think alike."
E Giulia? Ha un carattere forte o debole? "And Julia? Does she have a strong or weak personality?"	Tua sorella gemella è molto diversa da te. "Your twin sister is very different to you."
I nonni sono sempre pazienti con i nipoti. "Grandparents are always patient with their grandchildren."	Mi piacciono le persone socievoli. "I like friendly people."
Il mio collega di lavoro non è molto socievole. "My co-worker is not so sociable."	Carlo è troppo timido: non parla quasi mai. "Charles is too shy: he hardly ever talks."
A scuola mio figlio è timido, ma a casa è vivacissimo! "At school my child is shy, but at home he is rowdy!"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

carattere

While we use this noun to translate the English words "character" or "personality," be aware that the word *personalita* is a false friend, and it means a "famous person" or "VIP."

paziente

Another way that we can use to describe a patient person is by using the noun *pazienza*, as in *avere pazienza* ("to have patience").

fratello

Here are more family-related words: *sorella* ("sister"), *cugino/a* ("cousin"), or *zio/a* ("uncle"/"aunt").

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Agreement of Adjectives With Plural Nouns.
I loro fratelli invece sono molto timidi.
"Their brothers on the other hand are very shy."

As we have seen in the previous lesson, adjectives always agree in gender and number. In this lesson, we will focus on adjectives that refer to plural nouns.

The adjectives can refer to masculine and feminine nouns. Here is a table showing how to make adjectives ending in *-o* agree with singular nouns.

Masculine Plural	***Feminine Plural***
-i	*-e*

For Example:

1. *Sara ha gli occhi azzurri.*
   "Sara has blue eyes."
2. *Luisa e Carla hanno due giacche azzurre.*
   "Luisa and Carla have two blue jackets."

Occhi is a masculine plural noun; therefore, the adjective will end in *-i*.

Giacche is a feminine plural noun; therefore, the adjective will end in *-e*.

Here is a table showing how to make adjectives ending in -e agree with plural nouns.

Masculine Singular	***Feminine Singular***
-i	*-i*

For Example:

1. *Giovanni ha tre cani felic**i**.*
   "Giovanni has three happy dogs."
2. *Queste case sono grandi.*
   "These houses are big."

Cani is a masculine plural noun (*cane* is singular); therefore, the adjective *felice* will end in *-i*.

Case is a feminine plural noun (*casa* is singular); therefore, the adjective *grande* will end in *-i.*

As we said in lesson 9, noun endings do not always match. Like in the example above, they can match only when the noun and the adjective belong to the same group: both end in *-o* or both end in *-e*. If the adjective and the noun belong to different groups, then the ending will not match.

For Example:

1. *Giovanna e Daria sono due ragazz**e** felic**i**.*
   "Giovanna and Daria are two happy girls."
2. *Ci sono alcune statu**e** grand**i** nella nuova piazza.*
   "There are some big statues in the new square."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Gli animali e le persone sono proprio simili!
"Animals and people are quite alike!"

Even as long ago as Aesop's fables, people have used animals to describe traits of people's personality. Here is a list of expressions:

1. *avere una memoria da elefante*
   "to have a memory like an elephant"
2. *furbo come la volpe*
   "cunning like a fox"
3. *testardo come un mulo*
   "stubborn as a mule"
4. *mite come il bue*
   "good-natured like an ox"
5. *lento come una lumaca*
   "slow like a snail"
6. *muto come un pesce*
   "mute like a fish"
7. *forte come un leone*
   "strong like a lion"
8. *previdente come una formica*
   "provident like an ant"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #11

How Do You Like the Weather in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#11

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Che brutto tempo!
2. Silvia : In settembre di solito le giornate sono belle.
3. Mieke : Vorrei andare in bicicletta e godere della città. In estate è troppo caldo e umido.
4. Silvia : Hai ragione! Secondo le previsioni da giovedì il tempo migliora.
5. Mieke : Vorrei abitare alle Hawaii- bel tempo tutto l'anno.
6. Silvia : È vero. Però io amo sciare quindi in inverno mi piace la neve!

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : What horrible weather!
2. Silvia : In September, the days are usually beautiful.
3. Mieke : I'd like to cycle and enjoy the city. In the summer, it is too humid.
4. Silvia : You're right! According to the weather forecast, the weather will get better from Thursday.
5. Mieke : I'd like to live in Hawaii—beautiful weather all year round.
6. Silvia : It's true. But I love skiing, so in the winter, I like the snow.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
estate	summer	noun	feminine
migliorare	to get better	verb	
godere	enjoy	noun	
abitare	to live	verb	
secondo	according to	preposition	
andare in bicicletta	to cycle	verb	
umido	humid	adjective	masculine
troppo	too much	adverb and adjective	
previsione del tempo	weather forecast	nominal expression	
sciare	to ski	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Questa estate è troppo calda. This summer is too hot.	L'estate è il periodo delle vacanze di famiglia e del tempo caldo. Summer is the time of family vacations and warm weather.
caldo giorno estivo hot summer day	In estate Roberto trascorre le vacanze dai nonni. "In summer Roberto spends his holidays at the grandparents'."
L'estate in Italia è molto calda. "Summer in Italy is very hot."	Mia nonna è ancora ammalata, ma sta migliorando. "My grandma is still ill, but she is getting better."
Dopo la scuola, goditi le vacanze! "After school, enjoy your holidays!"	La famiglia si sta godendo un pasto in un giorno festivo. "The family is enjoying a holiday meal."
È bello abitare in campagna. "It's pleasant to live in the country."	Abito con i miei genitori. "I live with my parents."
Francesca abita fuori città. "Francesca lives out of the city."	Leggo il Vangelo secondo Marco. "I always read the Gospel according to Mark."
Mi piace andare in bicicletta soprattutto in primavera. "I like to cycle especially in spring."	Questo appartamento è ben arredato, ma un po' umido. "This apartment is well furnished, but a bit humid."
È umido. "It's humid."	Vorrei una birra ma non troppo fredda. "I'd like a beer but not too cold."
Non dovresti bere troppo vino. "You shouldn't drink too much wine."	Ho bevuto troppo. "I drank too much."
Ogni giorno papà segue le previsioni del tempo. "Every day daddy follows the weather forecast."	Di solito andiamo a sciare durante le vacanze di Natale. "We usually go skiing during Christmas holidays"
Vado sempre a sciare in inverno. "I always go skiing in winter."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

estate

The four seasons are *inverno* ("winter"), *primavera* ("spring"), *estate* ("summer"), and *autunno* ("fall").

secondo

Secondo me (literally, "according to me") is a very common way to express you own thoughts. It is not too imposing.

abitare

When introducing yourself, you can use both *abitare* and *vivere*. For example, *Abito/Vivo a Brescia* ("I live in Brescia").

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Some of the Most Common Prepositions of Time.
In estate è troppo umido.
"In the summer it is too humid."

Months of the Year

Months have Roman origins. ***Gennaio*** ("January") comes from Janus, the beginning of all events; ***Febbraio*** ("February") comes from the goddess Febris; and ***Marzo*** ("March") was dedicated to the God of War, Marte, as most wars began in March, with the coming of spring. ***Aprile*** ("April") comes from the verb *aperire ("*to open"), obviously referring to "the opening of flowers." ***Maggio*** ("May") was dedicated to the goddess of earth, Maia, while ***giugno*** ("June") derives from Giunone. ***Luglio*** ("July") is the month Julius Caesar was born (thirteenth of July) while ***agosto*** ("August") pays homage to the emperor Augustus. ***Settembre*** ("September") and ***ottobre*** ("October") come from the Latin numbers seven and eight. Similarly, ***novembre*** ("November") and ***dicembre*** ("December") are from the Latin numbers nine and ten.

Months never begin with a capital letter, unless they are at the beginning of a sentence.

In and *a* are the prepositions that we use before a month.

For Example:

1. *In marzo vado a Londra.*
   "In March, I go to London."
2. *A dicembre festeggiamo Natale.*
   "In December, we celebrate Christmas."
3. *In settembre di solito le giornate sono belle.*
   "In September, days are usually nice."

Seasons

The four seasons (***stagioni***) are ***primavera*** ("spring"), from the Latin *primo vere*, "first green"; ***estate*** ("summer"); ***autunno*** ("fall"); ***inverno*** ("winter").

The preposition for seasons is *in*.

For Example:

1. *In inverno amo sciare.*
   In winter, I love skiing.
2. *In estate è troppo umido.*
   "In the summer, it is too humid."

Other Prepositions of Time

The preposition *da* translates as the English word "from."

For Example:

1. *Secondo le previsioni da giovedì il tempo migliora.*
   "According to the weather forecast, the weather will get better from Thursday."

In Italian *da... a...* translates the English "from... to..."

For Example:

1. *Da giovedì a lunedì le scuole sono chiuse per le vacanze di Pasqua.*
   "From Thursday to Monday, schools will be closed for the Easter holidays."

Da ... a can also be prepositions of space.

For Example:

1. *Da Torino a Milano ci sono 150 Km.*
   "From Turin to Milan there are 150 km."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Vacations

Where do Italians go on vacation? The majority prefer to go to the sea, which is quite obvious since Italy is a peninsula. The favorite destinations are the long beaches of Romagna and Tuscany, but some of the most attractive coasts are in Calabria, Sicily, and, of course, Sardinia. About thirty percent of Italians spend their holiday in the mountains. Particularly popular are the heights of Valle d'Aosta, on the border with France; Trentino, which is close to Austria; and, of course, Dolomiti with their breathtaking landscapes are at the top of the list.

Recently, more people also like foreign destinations like the beaches of Greece, Spain, and Egypt or the European capitals like Paris, London, and Berlin. A few are for those of you who opt for exotic destinations. The most "affordable" are Cuba, Seychelles, and Mauritius.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #12
Are Italians Environmentally Conscious?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#12

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Silvia : Vai spesso in bicicletta?
2. Mieke : Sì, quando il tempo è bello. In Belgio è normale.
3. Silvia : In Italia amiamo andare in macchina. Non siamo affatto ecologisti.
4. Mieke : Non sono d’accordo. Tante persone a Torino usano i mezzi pubblici per andare al lavoro.
5. Silvia : Ah ok... Il tram però non è per niente puntuale.
6. Mieke : Mah... non direi. Ma... tu come vieni in pasticceria?
7. Silvia : ...in macchina.

ENGLISH

1. Silvia : Do you cycle often?
2. Mieke : Yes, when the weather is good. In Belgium, it is normal.
3. Silvia : In Italy, we love driving. We are not eco-friendly at all.
4. Mieke : I don't agree. Many people in Turin use public transportation to go to work.
5. Silvia : Ah ok... The tram, however, is not punctual at all.
6. Mieke : Mhm...I wouldn't say so. But...how do you come to the patisserie?
7. Silvia : ...by car.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
in	by	preposition	
amare	to love	verb	
lavoro	work, job	noun	masculine
normale	normal, regular, ordinary	adjective	
puntuale	on time, punctual	adjective	
tanto	much	adjective	
Belgio	Belgium	proper noun	masculine
ecologico	eco-friendly	adjective	
andare in macchina	to drive	verb	
mezzo publico	public transportation	nominal expression	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Stiamo partendo da Torino per Venezia in treno. "We are leaving from Turin to Venice by train."	I Giapponesi amano passare il tempo libero nei parchi. "Japanese people love spending free time in the parks."
Ami il tuo ragazzo? "Do you love your boyfriend?"	Amo viaggiare. "I love traveling."
Qual è il tuo lavoro? "What's your job?"	Vai al lavoro in macchina, in treno o in pullman? "Do you go to work by car, by train or by bus?"
Sto cercando un nuovo lavoro. "I'm looking for a new job."	Che lavoro fa Luigi? "What does Luigi do?" / "What job does Luigi do?"
In Inghilterra i bambini giocano sotto l'acqua: è normale. "In England children play under the rain: it's normal."	È normale? "Is it normal?"
In Giappone treni e bus sono sempre puntuali. "In Japan trains and buses are always very punctual."	Non sei mai puntuale! "You are never on time!"
Domani sera ci incontriamo con tanti amici. "Tomorrow evening we meet with many friends."	In Belgio molta gente usa ogni giorno la bicicletta. "In Belgium many people use a bicycle every day."

Viviamo in un mondo poco ecologico. "We live in a world that is not very eco-friendly."	Gli Italiani vanno spesso in macchina, meno a piedi. "Italian people often drive, less on foot."
Usi i mezzi pubblici per andare a scuola? "Do you use public transportation to go to school?"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

belgio

Notice that the nationality for people living in Belgium is *belga*, and it is unchangeable for men and women. The adjective is also *belga* and never changes regardless of whether it refers to a masculine or feminine noun.

lavoro

We can translate *lavoro* both as "job" or "work." It is also the first person of the verb *lavorare* ("to work"): *io lavoro* ("I work").

in

We use the preposition *in* with means of transportation. For example, *andare in macchina, in treno, in aereo* means "to go by car, by train, by airplane." The only exception is *andare a piedi* ("to go on foot").

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Adverbs of Negation.
Non siamo affatto ecologici.
"We are not eco-friendly at all."

We construct the negative sentence in Italian as follows:

the adverb *non* + verb

For Example:

1. *Vado a scuola alle 8:30.*
   Non vado a scuola alle 8:30.

"I go to school at eight-thirty."
"I don't go to school at eight-thirty."

Negation in Italian has two functions:

1. To state that something is false or wrong

2. To prohibit something

For Example:

1. *Non piove.*
   "It doesn't rain."
2. *Non mangiare la cioccolata.*
   "Don't eat chocolate."

In the prohibitive function, *non* is often followed by a verb in the infinitive form: -*are*, -*ere*, and -*ire*.

We often use other adverbs like *per niente* or *affatto* ("at all") in negative sentences to emphasize the negation. They are synonymous.

For Example:

1. *Non sono affatto d'accordo.*
   Non sono per niente d'accordo.
   "I don't agree at all."
2. *Il tram però non è per niente puntuale.*
   "The tram, however, is not punctual at all."

The position of per *niente* and *affatto* can change. We can place them either after the verb or after the complements, according to which word needs to be stressed. The position of *non* is fixed, and it is always before the verb.

For Example:

1. *Non mi piace per niente questa casa.*
   Non mi piace questa casa per niente.
   "I don't like this house at all."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

***In Bicicletta* ("By Bicycle")**

The bicycle as a means of transportation has almost disappeared in most parts of Italy and especially in the south. Cycling is nowadays a sport, a way to exercise, or a hobby for most of the people who go cycling in the countryside, especially in the first warm sunny days of the spring weekends. According to recent statistics, fifty percent of people use their bicycle only in their free time, and out of this group, twenty percent only during the weekend, and thirty percent only during vacations. However, in some cities in the northeast of Italy like Cremona, Modena, and Parma, it is possible to see more people cycling in the city center because it is part of the urban tradition of these cities. They are also very small cities, and for tourists, the best way to visit them is by bicycle. Ferrara also hosts one of the museums dedicated to the bicycle in Italy: *i musei del ciclismo*. The most important museum of the bicycle is in Veneto in a small town called Cesiomaggiore, where the street are named after famous Italian cyclists. This museum has not only videos and pictures of many years of *giro d'Italia* but also the best collections of bicycles in Italy, with the oldest one dating back in 1791.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #13
Talking About the Latest Italian Fashions

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#13

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Mi piacciono molto le magliette della collezione primaverile di quest'anno!
2. Mieke : Ma non sono un po' troppo colorate? Io preferisco tinte neutre.
3. Laura : A me, invece, piacciono i colori forti come il rosso, il fucsia e l'arancione.
4. Mieke : Ah, guarda, che ne dici di questi pantaloni?
5. Laura : No, non mi piacciono- sono troppo scuri. Perché non bianchi?
6. Mieke : Sì, hai ragione. Bianchi sono carini!

ENGLISH

1. Laura : I like the t-shirts of this year's spring collection very much!
2. Mieke : But are they not a bit too colorful? I prefer neutral colors.
3. Laura : Instead, I like bright colors like red, hot pink, and orange.
4. Mieke : Ah, look, what do you think of these slacks?
5. Laura : No, I don't like them...they are too dark. Why not white?
6. Mieke : Yes, you are right. White is nice!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
colorato	colorful	adjective	
arancione	orange	adjective	
collezione	collection	noun	feminine
carino	cute	adjective	
rosso	red	adjective	
maglietta	T-shirt	noun	feminine
forte	bright	adjective	
neutro	neutral	adjective	
fucsia	hot pink, fuchsia	noun, adjective	
tinta	color	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

In inverno preferisco mettere maglioni colorati. "In winter I prefer to wear colorful sweaters."	Il suo colore preferito è l'arancione. His favorite color is orange.
zucca arancione orange pumpkin	carota arancione orange carrot
L'arancione è un colore molto allegro. "Orange is a very happy color."	Il suo colore preferito è l'arancione. "His favorite color is orange."
La collezione primavera-estate di quest'anno è molto interessante. "This year's spring and summer collection is very interesting."	Paola, hai una cugina molto carina! "Paola, you have a very pretty cousin!"
Ho visto un vestito molto carino, voglio comprarlo! "I saw a very cute dress, I want to buy it."	Il tuo gatto è così carino! "Your cat is so cute!"
L'uomo è di fronte al muro rosso. The man is facing the red wall.	Semaforo rosso significa stop. Red on the traffic light means stop.
rosa rossa dal gambo lungo long stem red rose	L'uomo sta di fronte al muro rosso. The man is facing the red wall.
Rosa rossa a stelo lungo long stem red rose	Il rosso nel semaforo significa alt. Red on the traffic light means stop.
pomodoro rosso maturo ripe red tomato	mela rossa red apple
Rosso è il colore dell'amore. "Red is the color of love."	In caso di emergenza premere il pulsante rosso. "In case of emergency, press the red button."
Il vino rosso accompagna bene la carne. "Red wine goes well with meat."	maglietta di cotone cotton T-shirt
Di questi tempi le magliette firmate possono costare più di cento dollari. These days designer T-shirts can cost over one hundred dollars.	La maglietta blu è fatta di cotone. The blue T-shirt is made from cotton.
maglietta blu blue T-shirt	Quella maglietta ti sta bene. "That t-shirt suits you."

Compro una maglietta nuova. "I buy a new t-shirt."	Anche a mia nonna piacciono i colori forti nonostante l'età. "Also my grandma likes bright colors despite her age."
Mia sorella mette sempre gonne dai colori neutri. "My sister always wears neutral colored skirts."	La camera da letto di mia figlia è dipinta di fucsia. "My daughter's bedroom is painted in hot pink."
Perché ti piacciono le tinte scure? Io le odio. "Why do you like dark colors? I hate them."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

maglietta

This noun derives from *maglia*, which is a "long-sleeved shirt." *Maglietta* is a "short-sleeved shirt" and usually has no collar.

fucsia

The name of this color derives from the one of the plant Fuchsia, a plant that has hot pink flowers. We also write it as *fuxia*. It is a masculine noun, *il fucsia*, even though it ends in *-a*. As an adjective, it is unchangeable.

pantaloni

We use this word for both male or female "slacks" or "trousers." In Italian, it is possible to use the word *i pantaloni* as a plural noun or *il pantalone* as a singular noun.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Verb *Piacere* Followed by Plural Nouns.
Mi piacciono i colori forti.
"I like bright colors."

As we have studied in lesson 7, we use the verb *piacere* to express that we like something and in the negative form that we dislike something. We have also learned that the verb *piacere* works a little differently from most other Italian verbs.

The subject of the verb *piacere* is not the person who likes something (like in English) but the subject is the object being liked. So the conjugation is different:

mi piace ("I like")

ti piace ("you like")

gli piace ("he likes")

le piace ("she likes")

ci piace ("we like")

vi piace ("you like")

gli piace ("they like")

For Example:

1. *Mi piace la pasta al pomodoro.*
   "I like tomato sauce pasta."
2. *Vi piace questa casa?*
   "Do you like this house?"

In the examples above, the verb *piacere* is followed by a singular noun, namely *pasta* and *casa*. We used the verb *piacere* in its third-person singular: *piace*.

The verb *piacere* can also be followed by a plural noun. Look at the following examples.

For Example:

1. *Mi piacciono molto le magliette della collezione primavera di quest'anno!*
   "I like the t-shirts of this year's spring collection very much."
2. *Non mi piacciono questi pantaloni.*
   "I don't like these slacks."

When *piacere* is followed by a plural noun, then it is used in its third-person plural: *piacciono*.

For Example:

1. *Vorrei un gelato, ma questi gusti non mi piacciono.*
   "I'd like an ice cream, but I don't like these flavors."

The verb *piacere* can be followed also by a verb in the infinitive mode. In this case, we use the verb *piacere* in its third-person singular.

For Example:

1. *Vi piace andare in montagna?*
   "Do you like going to the mountains?"
2. *Non mi piace fare shopping il sabato pomeriggio.*
   "I don't like to go shopping on Saturday afternoon."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Moda, Il Made in Italy **("Fashion, Made in Italy")**

Italian fashion is, as everyone knows, famous worldwide, and it is an essential part of Italian culture. The most important centers of fashion in Italy are Milan, Florence, and Rome, although the production centers of the fashion traditions are scattered everywhere across the country. In Milan, the fashion week is held twice a year, like in other famous cities in the world such as New York or London.
The *quadrilatero della moda*, or the "fashion rectangular," is the area where the most famous boutiques and fashion centers are located. It covers via Monte Napoleone, via Manzoni, via della Spiga, and corso Venezia. Other important areas are Galleria Vittorio Emanuele II, the Duomo square, via Dante, and Corso Buenos Aires; all are within a walking distance from each other.
If the prices of the products of these boutiques are a bit out of reach, it is possible to immerse yourself in the culture of Italian fashion by visiting the recently opened *il museo della moda* ("the museum of fashion"). It is in the beautiful rococo style Palazzo Morando right in the *quadrilatero della moda*. And the entrance fee is free.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #14
Is Italian Grammar Difficult?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#14

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Claudio : Sembri confuso...
2. Jack : Sto studiando grammatica italiana, ma questo capitolo non è facile.
3. Claudio : Questa pagina parla dei sostantivi femminili e maschili e delle eccezioni... In bocca al lupo! Per le eccezioni, devi imparare a memoria le parole.
4. Jack : Oddio! Ripetiamo-...pigiama è femminile mentre pilota è maschile, giusto?
5. Claudio : No, pigiama è maschile come pilota.
6. Jack : Uff... e il mio esame è dopodomani.

ENGLISH

1. Claudio : You look confused...
2. Jack : I'm studying Italian grammar, but this chapter is not easy.
3. Claudio : This page talks about feminine and masculine nouns and the exceptions... Good luck! You have to learn the words by heart with the exceptions.
4. Jack : Gosh! Let's repeat them..."pajama" is feminine while "pilot" is masculine, right?
5. Claudio : No, "pajama" is masculine like "pilot."
6. Jack : Oh...and my exam is the day after tomorrow.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
parlare	to talk, to speak	verb	
giusto?	Right?	tag question	sentence
capitolo	chapter	noun	masculine
dopodomani	the day after tomorrow	noun	masculine
oddio	my goodness, good grief, good Heavens, my God	interjection	
confuso	confused	adjective	
a memoria	by heart	adverbial phrase	
In bocca al lupo	good luck!	exclamation	
ripetere	to repeat, to restate, to iterate	verb	
sostantivo	noun	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Parliamone! "Let's talk about it!"	Ha parlato del suo nuovo progetto. "He talked about his new project."
Tu parli troppo, Marco. "You speak too much, Marco."	Non mi parli più? "You're not speaking to me anymore?"
Lo conosci, giusto? "You know him, right?"	Tu sei nato nel 1985. Giusto? "You were born in 1985. Right?"
Oggi cerco di studiare tre capitoli di storia. "Today I'm trying to study three chapters of history."	Aveva grandi piani per dopodomani. "He had big plans for the day after tomorrow. "
Ci vediamo dopodomani. "See you the day after tomorrow."	Oddio! Cosa ti è successo? "My God! What happened to you?"
Non capisco bene queste regole: sono molto confuso. "I don't understand these rules: I'm very confused."	Cerca di imparare a memoria questa poesia. "Try to learn this poem by heart."
Ci vediamo, in bocca al lupo per tutto. "See you, good luck with everything."	Domani fai il tuo primo concerto, vero? In bocca al lupo! "Tomorrow you're doing your first concert, right? Good luck!"
Domani ripetiamo l'esperimento. "Tomorrow we're repeating the experiment."	Il tema della lezione di oggi sono i sostantivi. "Today's lesson's theme is noun(s)."
Quanti sostantivi ci sono in questa frase? "How many nouns are there in this clause?"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

parlare di

The verb *parlare* ("to talk") is followed by the preposition *di* ("of") and a noun to show the content of the conversation. It means "to talk of" or "about." We also use it to say what a book or movie is about.

in bocca al lupo

It means "good luck." Literally, it means "in the mouth of the wolf." The common answer to this expression is *crepi!* (meaning "May it die!") and not *grazie* ("thank you") since this answer is thought to bring bad luck instead.

giusto

This adjective means "right." For example, *E' giusto dividere i lavori domestici* ("It is right to share housework.") But, like in English, we can use "right" at the end of a sentence to confirm the content. For example, *Sei francese, giusto?* ("You are French, right?") We use the adjective *vero* in the same way.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is How to Recognize Masculine and Feminine Nouns in Italian.
Pigiama è maschile.
"Pajama is a masculine noun."

In Italian, it is possible to recognize whether a noun is feminine or masculine from the last letter of the word. In Italian, nouns are divided into two groups:

1. *-o* ending masculine nouns and *-a* ending feminine nouns
2. *-e* ending masculine and feminine nouns

It is possible to recognize only the nouns from the first group, while it is necessary to check the dictionary for the ones in the second group.

For example, *tavolo* ends in *-o*, so it's a masculine noun. The determinative article before *tavolo* is *il*: *il tavolo. Casa* ends in *-a*, so it's a feminine noun. The determinative article before *casa* is *la*: *la casa.*

A noun like *fiore* is masculine (*il fiore*), while a noun like *stazione* is feminine (*la stazione*).

For Example:

1. *Ho anche un tablet.*
   "I also have a tablet."
2. *Noi abbiamo un cane e due gatti.*
   "We have a dog and two cats."

We also use the verb *avere* to express age. Unlike English, we do not use the verb *essere* to say how old a person is.

For Example:

1. *Sara ha diciotto anni.*
   "Sara is eighteen."

There are also a few exceptions to this rule, and most of the exceptions concern the nouns belonging to the first group. The best way to memorize these nouns is to learn them with their article. Here is a list of some of the most common exceptions.

-a ending nouns that are masculine

Italian	"English"
il pigiama	"pajama"
il pilota	"pilot"
il gorgonzola	"gorgonzola" (a type of blue cheese)
il problema	"problem," "issue"
il fantasma	"ghost"
il panorama	"the landscape," "view"

For Example:

1. *Questo problema non ha soluzione.*
   "This problem has no solution."
2. *Da questa terrazza il panorama è bellissimo.*
   "From this terrace, the view is beautiful."

-*o* ending nouns that are feminine

Italian	"English"
la metro	"underground"
l'auto (this is a short form of *automobile)*	"car"
la mano	"hand"
la pallacanestro	"basketball"
la radio	"radio"
la moto (this is a short form of *motocicletta*)	"motorbike"

For Example:

1. *L'auto di Maria è proprio vecchia.*
   "Maria's car is really old."
2. *La nuova metro di Brescia è molto efficiente.*
   "The new underground of Brescia is very efficient."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

L'italiano fuori dall'Italia e alter lingue in Italia
"Italian outside Italy and other languages in Italy"

Italian is the official language of Italy and the Republic of San Marino. But it is not just spoken here. In the Vatican City, there is no official language established, but Italian is primarily spoken. In Switzerland, it is one of the official languages, and it is studied and learned in all the confederation schools and spoken as the mother language in the Swiss cantons of Ticino and Grigioni . It is co-official in Slovenian Istria and in Istria County in Croatia. It is widely known in some of the former colonies of Italy, like Somalia, Eritrea, and Ethiopia. Countries like Argentina, Australia, and Brazil have big communities of Italian immigrants who keep Italian as their community language, speaking it at home and transmitting it from generation to generation.

The Italian language was born in the thirteenth century, when Dante's *Divina Commedia* was written, making the dialect of Florence the model for its future developments.

At the same time, there are a number of languages that are spoken in Italy besides Italian. In Valle d'Aosta on the border with France, French is spoken, and in Trentino Alto Adige, near Austria, German is widely spoken. There are also pockets of ancient languages that have survived through the centuries: for example, *Griko*. Greeks colonized Calabria and, even today, there are people in that area who speak a Greek language called *Griko*, an echo of those ancient times. This unique dialect is one that may not be understood by other Italians, even today! Or *Sardo* is spoken in Sardinia, a co-official regional language. It is a Roman language and one of the most conservative ones.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #15

Which Italian Job Would You Like to Have?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#15

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Claudio : Non ci sono annunci interessanti questa settimana.
2. Mieke : Tu hai già un lavoro. Perchè cerchi un altro impiego?
3. Claudio : Il mio lavoro come impiegato in banca è stressante e non è più stimolante. Vorrei un lavoro più fantasioso...
4. Mieke : Il pasticcere o il cuoco? O magari il pittore!
5. Claudio : Ah!... tu fai la pasticcera. Immagina di cambiare lavoro- cosa vorresti fare?
6. Mieke : La ballerina o la cantante di opera lirica!

ENGLISH

1. Claudio : There are no interesting advertisements this week.
2. Mieke : You already have a job. Why are you looking for another one?
3. Claudio : My job as an employee at the bank is stressful and not exciting any more. I would like a more creative job...
4. Mieke : A pastry chef or a chef? Or maybe a painter?
5. Claudio : Ah ah. You are a pâtissier. Imagine changing jobs...what would you like to do?
6. Mieke : I'd like to be a ballerina or an opera singer!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
ballerina	ballerina	noun
impiego	job	noun
immaginare	to imagine, suppose, think	verb
cercare	to look for, seek, search	verb
pasticcere	pastry chef	noun
annuncio	advertisement	noun
fantasioso	creative	adjective
stimolante	interesting	adjective
pittore	painter	noun
stressante	stressful	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Mia figlia vorrebbe fare la ballerina. "My daughter would like to be a ballerina."	Mio fratello ha un buon impiego come direttore di banca. "My brother has a good job as a bank manager."
Non puoi neanche immaginare quanto tu sia importante per me. "You can't even imagine how important you are to me."	Io cerco il latte e tu il pane e poi ci incontriamo alla cassa. "I will look for the milk and you for the bread and then let's meet at the cash register."
Mary cercherà te al meeting. "Mary will look for you at the meeting."	Sto cercando una sciarpa carina. "I am looking for a nice scarf."
Sto cercando un vestito per la festa di domani sera. "I am looking for a dress for tomorrow evening's party."	Stai cercando qualcuno? "Are you looking for somebody?"
Il mio amico sta cercando un pasticcere. "My friend is looking for a pastry chef."	C'è un interessante annuncio di lavoro per te su questo giornale. "There is an interesting job advertisement for you in this newspaper."
Perché non fai il cuoco? E' un lavoro fantasioso. "Why don't you become a chef? It's a creative job."	Questo argomento è stimolante. "This topic is interesting."
Ti piacerebbe fare il pittore? "Would you like to be a painter?"	Insegnare ai bambini è talvolta stressante. "Teaching children is sometimes stressful."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

annuncio
This noun, which means both "advertisement" and "announcement, " comes from the verb *annunciare* ("to announce"). It is a masculine noun.

stressante

This adjective means "stressful." It comes from the word "stress," which in Italian is a masculine word as a foreign word: *lo stress.* The verb is *stressare*, which means "to give stress to somebody."

ballerina
In Italian, the words *ballerina* and *ballerino* do not only refer to the classical dancers but also to any type of dance. So we can better translate this term with the word "dancer."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is How to Change Masculine Nouns That Relate to Jobs Into Feminine Nouns.
Il pasticcere o il cuoco? O magari il pittore!
Ah!... tu fai la pasticcera.
"A pastry chef or a chef? Or maybe a painter?"
"Ah. You are a pâtissier."

We can group the nouns that describe jobs together according to their ending.

- Nouns that end in ***-aio***
- The feminine nouns end in ***-aia***

For Example:

Masculine	***Feminine***	**"English"**
*oper**aio***	*oper**aia***	"worker"
*gelat**aio***	*gelat**aia***	"ice cream vendor"
*giornal**aio***	*giornal**aia***	"newsagent"
*benzin**aio***	*benzin**aia***	"gas station attendant"
*forn**aio***	*forn**aia***	"baker"
*libr**aio***	*libr**aia***	"bookseller"
*macell**aio***	*macell**aia***	"butcher"

The meaning of most of these words is quite clear: the *gelataio* ("ice cream vendor") sells *gelato* ("ice cream"), the *libraio* ("bookseller") sells *libri* ("books"), the *giornalaio* ("newsagent") sells *giornali* ("newspapers")...

- Nouns that end in ***-iere.***
- The feminine nouns end in ***-iera***

For Example:

Masculine	*Feminine*	"English"
*camer**iere***	*camer**iera***	"waiter"
*inferm**iere***	*inferm**iera***	"nurse"
*parrucch**iere***	*parrucch**iera***	"hairdresser"
*cass**iere***	*cass**iera***	"cashier"

- Nouns that end in -***ista***
  These are both feminine and masculine nouns.

In order to understand whether the occupation refers to a man or a woman, it is necessary to check the article before the noun, as in ***il*** *giornalista* and ***la*** *giornalista.*

Here are some additional examples.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
tassista	"taxi driver"
barista	"bar attendant"
farmacista	"chemist"
camionista	"truck driver"
musicista	"musician"
dentista	"dentist"

For Example:

1. *Sara è una dentista mentre Marco è un musicista.*
   "Sara is a dentist, while Marco is a musician."

- Nouns that end in ***-tore***
- The feminine nouns end in ***-trice***

For Example:

Masculine	*Feminine*	"English"
*att**tore***	*att**trice***	"actor"
*scritt**ore***	*scritt**rice***	"writer"
*presenta**tore***	*presenta**trice***	"moderator"
*dirett**ore***	*dirett**rice***	"director"
*sena**tore***	*sena**trice***	"Senate representative"
*pitt**ore***	*pitt**rice***	"painter"

Some nouns like *muratore* ("construction worker") don't have any feminine counterpart.

For Example:

1. *Mi piace l'attore di questo film, ma non mi piace l'attrice bionda.*
   "I like the actor of this movie, but I don't like the blonde actress."

- Nouns that end in ***-o***
- The feminine nouns end in ***-a***

For Example:

Masculine	*Feminine*	"English"
*cuoc**o***	*cuoc**a***	"chef"
*modell**o***	*modell**a***	"model"
*postin**o***	*postin**a***	"postman"
*ballerin**o***	*ballerin**a***	"dancer"
*fotograf**o***	*fotograf**a***	"photographer"
*psicolog**o***	*psicolog**a***	"psychologist"

Some jobs form the feminine by adding the suffix ***-essa.***

For Example:

Masculine	*Feminine*	"English"
studente	*studentessa*	"student"
professore	*professoressa*	"teacher," "professor"
dottore	*dottoressa*	"doctor"

For Example:

1. *La nuova professoressa è molto simpatica.*
   "The new teacher is very friendly."

For some jobs there is no feminine form, so it is possible to add the word *donna* ("woman") to the job.

For Example:

Masculine	***Feminine***	**"English"**
il medico	*il medico* ***donna***	"doctor"
il soldato	*il soldato* ***donna***	"soldier"
il poliziotto	*il poliziotto* ***donna*** *(*recently also *poliziotta)*	"policeman"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Faccio il casalingo **("I'm a househusband")**

The word for "housewife" in Italian is *casalinga*. Although the Italian word has more to do with *casa* ("house") than with woman or wife as it does in English, the *casalinga* has always been a woman, and the noun has always only been feminine, until recently.
Il casalingo is a word that is easy to find on the Internet, even if it is still rare to meet a *casalingo* in the flesh. In 2005, at the national children singing competition Zecchino d'oro, a little girl sang a song titled *Il casalingo*, describing what her dad would do if he were working at home. Maybe the answer is somewhere on the website of the AsUC (*Associazione Uomini Casalinghi*, or "Association of Househusbands"), which gathers the *uomini casalinghi*. On their website, there is information and advice on how to do the grocery shopping properly and how to save on electricity bills. There is also a manual, *Casalingo e contento* ("Househusband and Happy"), which can help a new *casalingo* to survive the housework. There are about 6,000 members in this association, but in Italy, the actual number of men who enjoy putting the apron on, fluttering their duster, and ironing shirts is around 22,000.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #16

Have You Been to this Famous Italian Cafe?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#16

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Jack : Davvero è la tua prima volta in questo caffè? Quest'anno festeggia il duecentocinquantesimo anno dalla fondazione.
2. Claudio : Beh, non sono di Torino e poi non ho mai molto tempo libero... Però mi piace qui.
3. Jack : Che ne dici di un secondo giro di birre?
4. Claudio : No Jack, non reggo molto l'alcool. Mi prendo un caffè della casa.
5. Jack : Il famoso Bicerin- è una bomba calorica di cioccolata e panna!

ENGLISH

1. Jack : Is it really your first time in this café? This year it celebrates its two hundred and fiftieth year since its foundation.
2. Claudio : Well, I'm not from Turin and I never have much free time. But I like it here.
3. Jack : How about a second round of beers?
4. Claudio : No Jack, I don't hold my booze well. I'll have the house coffee.
5. Jack : The famous Bicerin! It's a calorific bomb of chocolate and cream!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
tempo libero	free time, spare time	phrase	
cioccolata	chocolate	noun	feminine
festeggiare	to celebrate	verb	
panna	whipped cream, sour cream	noun	
famoso	famous	adjective	masculine
davvero	really, truly, indeed	adverb	
caffè della casa	house coffee	noun	
reggere l'alcool	to hold booze	verbal expression	
bomba	bomb	noun	
giro	circle, round	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Non ho tempo libero. "I don't have any free time."	Fa freddo: prendo una cioccolata calda. "It’s cold. I’ll have a hot chocolate."
Quando festeggiamo le vostre nozze? "When do we celebrate your wedding?"	Domani sera festeggiamo il compleanno di Lucia. "Tomorrow evening we are celebrating Lucia's birthday."
Hai comprato la panna per il dolce? "Did you buy the whipped cream for the dessert?"	Cannes ospita il festival del cinema più famoso del mondo ogni anno. Cannes hosts the world's most famous film festival every year.
attore famoso famous actor	Beckett è un famoso drammaturgo irlandese. "Beckett is a famous Irish playwright."
Quel tizio è famoso. "That guy is famous."	Sei davvero vegetariano? "Are you really vegetarian?"
Devo davvero andare. "I really have to go."	Davvero? "Really?"
Ecco il caffè della casa. E’ una specialità! "Here is the house coffee. It’s a speciality!"	Dammi un altro goccio di vino: reggo abbastanza bene l’alcool. "Give me another sip of wine: I hold my booze well enough."
Questa lasagna è una bomba! Complimenti! "This lasagna is a bomb! Congratulations!"	Facciamo un giro? "Shall we take a walk?"

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

tempo libero

It refers to the time a person is not working and can relax or do a hobby. The possessive adjective is not necessary in Italian.

For Example:

1. *Nel tempo libero mi piace giocare a calcio*.
   "In my free time, I like playing soccer."

...della casa

It often refers to something produced by the specific café or restaurant one is in. It can be *il caffè della casa* or *il vino della casa* or *il liquore della casa.*

bomba

This noun means "bomb," and like in English, it has a literal meaning as well as a figurative meaning. As for the latter, we can use it to describe something "delicious" or something/someone "beautiful."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Ordinal Numbers.
Che ne dici di un secondo giro di birre?
"How about a second round of beers?"

Ordinal numbers in Italian correspond to the English first, second, third... Unlike the numbers in English, in Italian, ordinal numbers have a distinct form for the numbers one through ten.

Number	***Dutch***
1°	*primo*
2°	*secondo*
3°	*terzo*
4°	*quarto*
5°	*quinto*
6°	*sesto*
7°	*settimo*
8°	*ottavo*
9°	*nono*
10°	*decimo*

For Example:

1. *Davvero è la tua prima volta in questo caffè?*
   "Is it really your first time in this café?"
2. *Abito al nono piano di quest'edificio.*
   "I live on the ninth floor of this building."

After *decimo*, we form ordinals by dropping the final vowel of the cardinal number and adding the suffix *-esimo*.

For Example:

1. *unidici* = *unidicesimo*
   trentaquattro = *trentaquattresimo*

2. *Quest'anno festeggia il duecentocinquantesimo anno dalla fondazione.*
   "This year it celebrates its two hundred and fiftieth year from its foundation."

Numbers ending in *-trè* and *-sei* retain the final vowel.

For Example:

1. *quarantatrè = quarantatreesimo*
2. *settantasei = settantaseiesimo*

Unlike cardinal numbers, ordinal numbers agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify. Ordinal numbers normally precede the noun.

For Example:

1. *Vado a Napoli per la terza volta quest'anno.*
   "I go to Naples for the third time this year."

Volta is feminine; therefore, the ordinal number adjective, *terzo* for three, ends in *-a*.

For Example:

1. *Non gli piace abitare al ventesimo piano.*
   "He doesn't like living on the twentieth floor."

Piano is masculine; therefore, the ordinal number adjective *ventesimo* for twenty ends in *-o*.

We write abbreviations with a small ° (masculine) or ª (feminine).

For Example:

1. *il 25° anno*
   "the twenty-fifth year"
2. *la 4ª pagina*
   "the fourth page"

We often use Roman numbers when referring to popes, royals, and centuries.

For Example:

1. *Il nuovo Papa si chiama Francesco I.*
   "The new Pope's name is Francis the 1st.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Caffè al Bicerin

Caffè al Bicerin is a small historical café that opened in Turin in 1763. It is located in an old square in the center of the city, Piazza della Consolata, and offers a warm and elegant atmosphere that brings its visitors back to the nineteenth century. Of course, the menu includes some delicious and unique drinks. It is famous for the drink Il Bicerin, a house specialty made with espresso coffee, chocolate, fresh cream, and a secret recipe that mixes these ingredients together into an exquisite hot drink. The flavor of the Bicerin has been fascinating clients for more than 200 years, and the café is named after its famous beverage. Bicerin is a word in the Piedmont dialect and means *bicchierino* ("small glass"), the glass in which the café's famous drink is served. In this café, it is also possible to try other local specialties like the house hot chocolate, chestnuts covered in chocolate, and the *zabaione*, a beverage made with egg yolk, sugar, and sweet wine like Marsala or Moscato d'Asti.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #17
Postcards From Italy

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#17

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Jack : Mhm... che scrivo?Allora... Carissimo Marco, sono a Torino da alcuni mesi. La città è splendida- ci sono piazze antiche e musei importanti come quello egizio. Il tirocinio è interessante e c'è una ragazza molto simpatica...

2. Mieke : Jack? Jack? Che fai? Come sei pensieroso!

3. Jack : Scusa. Sono intento a scrivere una cartolina a un amico di Napoli. Vuoi pranzare insieme?

ENGLISH

1. Jack : Mhm...what shall I write? Well, Dearest Marco, I've been in Turin for a few months. The city is splendid...there are old squares and important museums, like the Egyptian one. The internship is interesting, and there is a very friendly girl...

2. Mieke : Jack? Jack? What are you doing? You look deep in thought!

3. Jack : Sorry. I'm concentrating on writing a postcard to a friend from Naples. Do you want to have lunch together?

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
splendido	splendid	adjective
insieme	together	adverb
alcuni-e	a few	indefinite adjective
cartolina	postcard	noun
pensieroso	pensive, wistful, thoughtful, pondering	adjective
carissimo	dearest	adjective
tirocinio	internship	noun
importante	important	adjective
intento	concentrated	adjective
antico	ancient, old	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Questo splendido palazzo risale al secolo scorso. "This splendid palace dates back to the past century."	Dormono tutti insieme in una stanza. "They sleep all together in one room."

Facciamo una passeggiata insieme? "Shall we take a walk together?"	Oggi visitiamo solo alcune chiese di Firenze. "Today we only visited a few churches in Florence."
Da dove viene questa cartolina? "Where is this postcard from?"	Quando arriverai in Italia inviami una cartolina. "When you'll be in Italy send me a postcard!"
Oggi sembri molto pensieroso. "Today, you look very thoughtful."	Carissimo Andrea, sono in vacanza in Sicilia. "Dearest Andrew, I'm on holiday in Sicily."
Sto facendo questo tirocinio con tre studenti stranieri. "I'm doing this internship with three foreign students."	informazione importante important information
cosa più importante most important thing	La colazione è il pasto più importante della giornata. Breakfast is the most important meal of the day.
Per me tu sei importante. "You're important to me."	Agata è intenta a chiacchierare con le sue amiche. "Agata is concentrated on chatting with her friends."
Questa biblioteca è molto antica. "This library is very old."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

alcuni-e

We use this adjective only in the plural masculine and feminine form. It means "some." The singular forms also exist, but the usage is different. This adjective only comes before the noun, and it declines according to the noun that follows.

antico

It means "ancient," "old," and "antique." When this adjective refers to a plural masculine noun, it becomes *antichi*, while if the noun is feminine plural, it becomes *antiche*. We add the *-h* to keep the same [-k] sound as in the singular forms.

cartolina

The Italian word for "postcard" comes from *carta* ("paper"). The word for "card" is actually very different: *il biglietto*.

For Example:

1. *I miei amici non spediscono più cartoline quando vanno in vacanza.*
   "My friends don't send postcards anymore when they go on vacation."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of *C'è* and *Ci Sono*.
Ci sono piazze antiche.
"There are old squares."

C'è and *ci sono* correspond to the English "there is" and "there are." They state the existence or presence of something or somebody.

C'è is made up of two parts: *ci* (pronoun of space, "there") and *è* (third-person singular of the verb *essere*, meaning "to be"). Because *ci* ends in a vowel and *è* is also a vowel, we drop the *-i*.

C'è is always followed by a singular noun.

For Example:

1. *C'è una ragazza molto simpatica.*
   "There is a very friendly girl."
2. *Sul tavolo c'è un vaso di fiori.*
   "On the table there is a vase of flowers."

C'è can also be followed by uncountable nouns.

For Example:

1. *Non correre. C'è tempo.*
   "Don't run. There is time."

Ci sono is made up of two parts: *ci* (pronoun of space, "there") and *sono* (third-person plural of the verb *essere*, meaning "to be").

Ci sono is followed by a plural noun.

For Example:

1. *A Bergamo ci sono 100 chiese.*
   "In Bergamo, there are one hundred churches."
2. *Ci sono tante persone alla tua festa di compleanno.*
   "There are many people at your birthday party."

Ci sono can also be followed by a list of singular nouns.

For Example:

1. *In questa casa ci sono una cucina, un salotto, un bagno e due camere.*
   "In this house there is a kitchen, a living room, a bathroom, and two bedrooms."

In colloquial Italian, we often use *c'è* before a list of singular nouns, but it is not grammatically correct.

C'è and *ci sono* also mean "*being here" or "being there*."

For Example:

1. *Scusi, c'è Antonio?*
   "Excuse me, is Antonio there?"

It would be unnatural to say *Scusi, Antonio è lì?*

As in the example above, we often use *c'è* to ask for a person on the phone.

For Example:

1. *Signora Rossi: Pronto?*
   Davide: Buongiorno. C'è Marco?
   Signora Rossi: No, non c'è. Torna alle 5.
2. "Mrs. Rossi: Hello?"
   "Davide: Good morning. Is Marco there?"
   "Mrs. Rossi: No, he isn't. He comes back at five."

In the negative form, we place the adverb *non* before *ci.*

For Example:

1. *Non c'è fretta. Sono solo le 2.*
   "There is no rush. It's only two."
2. *Non ci sono edifici moderni in centro a Roma.*
   "There are no modern buildings in the center of Rome."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Cosa Vedere a Torino e Dintorni
"Things to See in Turin and the Surroundings"

Torino, or in English "Turin," is the capital of Piedmont in Italian Piemonte, and it's one of the most famous cities in Italy, especially after the Winter Olympic Games in 2006. It's located in between the West Alps and the Pianura Padana, and it is crossed by the biggest river in Italy, the Po River. Torino was the city of the royal family i Savoia for centuries and also became the first capital of Italy from 1861 to 1865. The most famous monuments in Turin tell a lot about its glorious past, like Palazzo Reale in the heart of the city in the Piazza Castello, the former residence of the Savoia family, or Palazzo Madama, the first Senate of the Italian kingdom. Torino is also famous for two of its major museums: *il Museo nazionale del Cinema* ("the National Museum of Cinema") and *il Museo egizio* ("the Egyptian Museum").
In the surroundings of the city there are some renowned villas like *la Palazzina di caccia of Stupinigi* ("the Hunting Residence of Stupinigi") and *la Reggia di Venaria* ("the Royal palace of Venaria"), a huge site built from 1658 to 1679 by Carlo Emanuele II, who wanted to create a small Versailles near Turin. The Reggia is now open to the public after its long period of renovation.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #18
Don't Be the Third Wheel in Italy!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#18

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Che fai domani sera? Esci con me e Jack? Andiamo alla Mole Antonelliana a visitare il museo del cinema.

2. Laura : Mi dispiace, vorrei fare lo straordinario al lavoro. Sono al verde questo mese. E poi mi voglio esercitare con qualche ricetta nuova. E soprattutto non voglio uscire con voi due a reggere la candela!

3. Mieke : Siamo solo amici! E poi saliamo con l'ascensore fino a 85 metri di altezza- immagina che bella vista!

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : What are you doing tomorrow evening? Are you coming out with me and Jack? We are going to the Mole Antonelliana to visit the cinema museum.

2. Laura : I'm sorry, I'd like to work overtime. I'm broke this month. Also, I want to practice some new recipes. And above all, I don't want to go out with you two and be the third wheel.

3. Mieke : We are only friends! And we will also go eighty-five meters up in the elevator...imagine what a beautiful view there is!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
essere al verde	to be broke	verbal expression	
ascensore	elevator	noun	masculine
straordinario	extra work	noun	
vista	sight, view, panorama	noun	feminine
reggere la candela	to be the third wheel	verbal expression	
visitare	to visit	verb	
soprattutto	especially, above all	adverb	n/a
ricetta	recipe, prescription	noun	feminine
salire	to get on, to get in, to go up	verb	
esercitare	to practice	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Papà mi presti dei soldi? Sono al verde. "Dad, can you lend me some money? I'm broke."	Mi puoi prestare 200 €? Sono proprio al verde. "Can you lend me 200 €? I'm really broke."
ascensore affollato crowded elevator	Un ascensore sta salendo e un ascensore sta scendendo. One elevator is going up, and one elevator is going down.
Prendiamo le scale. L'ascensore è fuori servizio. "Let's take the stairs. The elevator is out of order."	Ieri ho fatto tre ore di straordinario. "Yesterday I worked three hours of extra work."
Com'è la vista dalla tua camera? "How is the view from your room?"	Che ci sto a fare io qui con voi due? A reggere la candela? "What should I do here with you two? Am I the third wheel?"
Ci piace visitare i paesini del centro Italia. "We love visiting the small towns in Central Italy."	Se andate in Sicilia, dovete assolutamente visitare l'Etna, il famoso vulcano. "If you go to Sicily, you must absolutely visit Etna, the famous volcano."
Vorrei visitare tanti posti in Italia. "I would like to visit many places in Italy."	Sì, amo soprattutto la lasagna. "Yes, I especially love lasagna."
Nella mia cucina ho tanti libri di ricette. "In my kitchen I have a lot of recipe books."	Ho provato questa nuova ricetta. "I tried this new recipe."
Salgo al primo piano. "I go up to the first floor."	Non sono mai salito su un aeroplano. "I've never been on an airplane."
Devi esercitarti sempre di più a suonare il pianoforte. "You have to practice more and more to play the piano."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

visitare

Be aware that we use this word only for visiting places and not people. If you want to translate the English "to visit friends or family," it is best to use the verbal expression *andare a trovare.*

essere al verde

We use this common expression to say that someone "has no money." It is also possible to say *essere in rosso* (literally, "to be in the red") or *avere le tasche vuote* ("to have empty pockets").

reggere la candela

This expression literally means "to hold the candle," which means "to be the third wheel." It probably comes from the common idea that we use a candle during romantic dates, and in this idiom, the third person is holding it!

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Verb *Uscire* ("to Go Out") and *Salire* ("to Go Up").
Esci con me e Jack?
"Are you coming out with me and Jack?"

Uscire means "to go" or "to come out," "to leave," or "to exit." It is an irregular verb. Here is its conjugation:

Italian	**"English"**
io esco	"I go out"
tu esci	"you go out"
lui/lei esce	"he/she goes out"
noi usciamo	"we go out"
voi uscite	"you go out (plural)"
loro escono	"they go out"

The verb *uscire* is intransitive; therefore, it does not take a direct object.

For Example:

1. *Stasera Luisa esce con Maria e Sandra.*
   "Tonight Luisa goes out with Maria and Sandra."
2. *Quando esci di casa, chiudi la porta a chiave.*
   "When you leave the house, lock the door."

Notice that the preposition that we use after *uscire* in the meaning of "to leave" or "to exit" is *di* if the noun is *casa* or *da* for other nouns.

For Example:

1. *Giorgio esce dall'ufficio alle 17.*
   "Giorgio leaves the office at five p.m."

Another irregular verb that has the same conjugation as *uscire* is *riuscire* ("to manage to" or "can").

For Example:

1. *Non riesco a concentrarmi con questo rumore.*
   "I can't concentrate with this noise."

Salire

Salire means "to go up," "to climb," or "to rise." It is an irregular verb. Here is its conjugation:

Italian	"English"
io salgo	"I go up"
tu sali	"you go up"
lui/lei sale	"he/she goes up"
noi saliamo	"we go up"
voi salite	"you go up (plural)"
loro salgono	"they go up"

Salire can be both transitive and intransitive.

For Example:

1. *Salgo le scale fino al quinto piano.*
   "I walk up the stairs to the fifth floor."
2. *Salgo fino al quinto piano con l'ascensore.*
   "I go up the fifth floor in the elevator."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Il Museo Nazionale Del Cinema

The National Museum of Cinema in Turin is housed in the tower of the *Mole Antonelliana*, a major landmark building of the city. Built in 1889, the Mole is 167 meters in height and therefore the Museum is the tallest museum in Europe.
The museum covers the history of cinema starting with the first moving pictures and ending with modern days. The exhibition is on five floors, covers 3,200 square meters, and houses everything related to cinema and movie making. There is a huge collection of posters and advertising material, costumes, props, sketches, and a library that contains 80,000 documents and photos. The museum is very interactive with a lot to see and to touch; it is possible to use your iPad to guide your visit.
Not only has the museum has been rated one of the best in Europe, but the interior design of the building and the view are also terrific. There is a panoramic elevator with transparent glass walls that goes up seventy-five meters in fifty-nine seconds. It goes through a single open space without middle floors and arrives at the very top of the *Mole Antonelliana*, where you can admire a 360-degree view of the city.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #19

Can You Smoke in this Italian Hotel Room?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#19

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Receptionist : Hotel Gran Duca. Buona sera.
2. Claudio : Buona sera. Chiamo dalla camera 21. Posso avere una coperta e un altro cuscino? E posso avere anche un portacenere?
3. Receptionist : Le porto subito il cuscino e la coperta, ma la Sua camera è non-fumatori. Non può fumare, mi dispiace. Vuole cambiare camera?
4. Claudio : No, pazienza. La ringrazio.

ENGLISH

1. Receptionist : Hotel Gran Duca. Good evening.
2. Claudio : Good evening. I'm calling from room twenty-one. May I have another blanket and pillow? And may I have an ashtray?
3. Receptionist : I'll bring the pillow and the blanket right away, but your room is non-smoking. You cannot smoke, I'm sorry. Would you like to change your room?
4. Claudio : No, never mind. Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
pazienza	never mind	exclamation	
coperta	blanket, cover	verb	
cambiare	to change, to shift, to exchange	verb	
camera	room	noun	feminine
non fumatore	non-smoking	noun	
chiamare	to call	verb	
portare	to bring, take	verb	
portacenere	ashtray	noun	masculine
fumare	to smoke	verb	
cuscino	pillow	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Non arrivaremo mai in tempo. Pazienza! "We will never arrive in time. Never mind!"	Luca dorme sempre con un piede fuori dalle coperte. "Luca always sleeps with a foot outside of the blankets."
Per la fine dell'anno voglio cambiare macchina. "By the end of the year, I want to change my car."	Un portiere ha portato i nostri bagagli in camera. A porter carried our bags to our room.
camera del dormitorio dormitory room	camera d'albergo hotel room
Andate nella camera numero nove. "Go to room number nine."	Posso avere un posto in uno scompartimento per non fumatori? "Can I have a seat in a no-smoking compartment?"
Assicurati di avere il codice pronto quando chiami l'ufficio postale. "Make sure to have the tracking number ready, when you are calling the post office. "	Ti chiamo più tardi, dopo che avrò finito i compiti "I will call you later, after I'm done with my homework."
Hai chiamato tuo fratello? "Did you call your brother?"	Chiamami più tardi. "Call me later."
Puoi portare il vino? "Can you bring the wine?"	Mi porti il conto, per favore. "Bring me the check, please."
Portami al mare domani! "Take me to the beach tomorrow!"	portacenere sporco dirty ashtray
portacenere con mozziconi di sigaretta ashtray with cigarette butts	Hai un portacenere? Do you have an ashtray?
In questa camera da letto non c'è un portacenere. "In this bedroom there is no ashtray."	Mio padre non fuma. "My father does not smoke."
cuscino sul sedile pillow on the seat	Ti porteranno un cuscino se lo richiedi. They will bring you a pillow if you ask for one.
Voglio cambiare questo cuscino. E' troppo duro. "I want to change this pillow. It's too hard."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

chiamare

This verb means "to call," and we use it also in the meaning of "to telephone." It requires a direct object with no preposition.

For Example:

1. *Puoi chiamare Sara?*
   "Can you call Sara?"

camera

The word *camera* means "bedroom." The plural form is *camere*.

For Example:

1. *Questa casa ha tre camere.*
   "This house has three bedrooms."

In a hotel it can be *camera singola* ("single room") or *camera matrimoniale* ("double room").

portacenere

This is a compound noun made by *porta*, a shortened form of *portare* ("to bring," "to take," or "to hold") and *cenere* ("ash"). Even if *cenere* is a feminine noun (*la cenere*), the noun *portacenere* is a masculine noun (*il portacenere*).

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of the Verb *Potere.*
Posso avere un portacenere?
"May I have an ashtray?"

The verb *potere* means "to be able to," "can," or "may." It is a modal verb and has an irregular conjugation:

io posso

tu puoi

lui/lei può

noi possiamo

voi potete

loro possono

It is always followed by an infinitive verb (*-are*, *-ere*, *-ire*) and/or by a direct object.

For Example:

1. *Puoi fare la spesa per stasera?*
   "Can you do the shopping for tonight?"

We use *potere* to make a request in polite and or formal situations.

For Example:

1. At a reception desk at a hotel:
   Posso avere un'altra coperta?
   "May I have another blanket?"
2. Talking to a stranger:
   Può fare una fotografia a noi due?
   "Can you take a picture of the two of us?"

We use *potere* to ask for and grant permission.

For Example:

1. *Possiamo mangiare questa torta di mele?*
   "Can we eat this apple cake?"
2. *Mamma, possiamo tornare a casa un'ora più tardi?*
   "Mom, can we come back home an hour later?"
3. *Puoi tornare per le 16.*
   "You can come back around four p.m."

In the negative form, we place the adverb *non* before the verb *potere*. We use the negative form of *potere* to deny permission and to express that something is not allowed.

For Example:

1. *Non può fumare in camera.*
   "You cannot smoke in the room."
2. *Non puoi assaggiare il tiramisù. E' per cena.*
   "You cannot try the tiramisu. It is for dinner."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Un Hotel Inusuale ("An Unusual Hotel")

If you are traveling in Italy and fancy having an unconventional hotel experience, here are some ideas of places where you could have a unique experience.
In Gubbio, a medieval city in the heart of Umbria, central Italy, there is a medieval castle called *castello di Petroia* that is now a beautiful hotel. It's located in a slightly remote area, surrounded by forests; needless to say, it has an enchanting atmosphere. You can even sleep in the room located in the tower built in the fourteenth century. It takes a lot of steps to climb it, but it's worth the view at the top.
In Treviso, in Veneto in the northeast of Italy, the Locanda Rosa Rosae is a hotel created inside an old windmill from 1750. You are taken back in the eighteenth century with all the comforts of a modern hotel, plus a mill stream running past your bedroom.
In the city of Gondola, Venezia, you can find a hotel that is just like a little yacht. The hotel name is Sarah. As you may imagine, rooms may be a little smaller than a usual hotel, but a night there is a great way to spend a night in Venice, the city of canals.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #20
A Day at the Italian Races

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#20

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Jack : Vieni spesso all'ippodromo?
2. Claudio : Abbastanza spesso. Amo i cavalli e so cavalcare abbastanza bene. E poi mi piacciono le corse e le scommesse! So riconoscere il cavallo vincente!
3. Jack : Ah sì? Sei così bravo? Allora vinci spesso...
4. Claudio : No, per niente! E posso scommettere solo piccole somme di denaro. Non voglio rischiare. Ma se oggi vinco, ti offro il pranzo!

ENGLISH

1. Jack : Do you often come to the racecourse?
2. Claudio : Quite often. I love horses, and I can ride a horse quite well. And I like races and betting! I can predict the winning horse!
3. Jack : Ah yes? Are you that good? So you often win...
4. Claudio : Ah, ah... not at all. And I can only bet small amounts of money. I don't want to take risks. But if I win today, lunch is on me!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
cavallo	horse	noun	masculine
rischiare	to risk, to gamble, to dare	verb	
amare	to love	verb	
offrire	to offer, to pay	verb	
bravo	good, clever, smart, skilled	adjective	
ippodromo	racecourse	noun	
scommessa	bet	noun	
corsa	race	noun	
somma	amount	noun	
cavalcare	to ride a horse	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

cavalcare un cavallo ride a horse	I cavalli sono animali belli. Horses are beautiful animals.
Il cavallo sta correndo nel campo. The horse is running in the field.	cavallo nel campo horse in a field
I cavalli selvaggi sono bellissimi. "Wild horses are gorgeous."	Vado a cavallo una volta al mese. "I go horseback-riding once a month."
Non rischiare troppo. "Don't risk too much."	I Giapponesi amano passare il tempo libero nei parchi. "Japanese people love spending free time in the parks."
Ami il tuo ragazzo? "Do you love your boyfriend?"	Amo viaggiare. "I love traveling."
Offro la cena a tutti! "I offer the dinner to everybody!"	Sei molto brava a disegnare. "You are very good at drawing."
L'ippodromo di San Siro a Milano è famoso. "The San Siro racecourse in Milan is famous."	Ho perso una scommessa con mia sorella. "I lost a bet with my sister."
Gli atleti hanno iniziato la corsa. "The athletes started the race."	Per il matrimonio abbiamo bisogno di una bella somma di denaro. "For the wedding we need a great amount of money."
Sai cavalcare? Io no. Ho paura di cadere. "Can you ride a horse? I can't. I'm afraid to fall."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

cavallo

The noun *cavallo* means "horse," and the verb is *cavalcare* ("to ride a horse"). Be aware that the adjective is a bit different: it's *equino*.

For Example:

1. *Questa è una macelleria equina.*
   "This is a horsemeat butchery."

bravo

It means to "be good at," and we often use it to compliment or to encourage people, especially kids when they do well.

For Example:

1. *Brava, Maria!*
   "Good job, Maria!"

offrire

This verb means "to offer" or "to offer to pay for something."

For Example:

1. *Ti offro un drink.*
   "I offer you a drink."

We also use it to translate the expression "something is on me" since there is no similar expression in Italian.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of the Verbs *Sapere, Potere,* and *Conoscere.*
So cavalcare abbastanza bene.
"I can horse ride quite well."

The verb *sapere* is an irregular verb. Here is its conjugation:

Italian	**"English"**
io so	"I know"
tu sai	"you know"
lui/lei sa	"he/she knows"
noi sappiamo	"we know"
voi sapete	"you know" (plural)
loro sanno	"they know"

It is a transitive verb and can be followed by a noun or by a verb in the infinitive mood.

Sapere means "to be able to" or "to know how," and we often translate it into English as "can" or "to be able to."

For Example:

1. *Quante lingue straniere sai parlare?*
   "How many foreign languages can you speak?"
2. *Loro sanno cantare molto bene.*
   "They can sing very well."

Be aware that when expressing an ability, we use the verb *sapere*, not the verb *potere*. As we studied in lesson 19, we use the verb *potere* for making polite requests or for asking and granting permission.

For Example:

1. *Posso scommettere solo piccole somme di denaro.*
   "I can only bet small amounts of money."
2. *Papà, posso usare la tua macchina?*
   "Dad, can I use your car?"

The verb *sapere* also translates as "to know." It is also important to know the difference between the verb *sapere* and *conoscere*, both meaning "to know." Let's look at the examples below.

For Example:

1. *So suonare il piano*.
   "I can play the piano."/"I know how to play the piano."
2. *So la strada per arrivare da Luca.*
   "I know the way to get to Luca's."

Conoscere means "to know" or "to be acquainted with."

For Example:

1. *Noi conosciamo Giorgio, l'amico di Sara.*
   "We know Giorgio, Sara's friend."
2. *Non conosco la città.*
   "I don't know the city."

In some cases, the usage of *sapere* and *conoscere* can overlap and therefore be confusing. It can help to remember that *sapere* can be followed by a noun as a direct object or by a verb, while *conoscere* can only be followed by a noun as a direct object.

For Example:

1. *So suonare il violino.*
   "I can play the violin."
2. *So dove andare.*
   "I know where to go."
3. *Conosco Giulia*.
   "I know Giulia."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Ippodromi e Corse Dei Cavalli in Italia **("Racecourses and Horse Races in Italy")**

In today's Italy, there are about forty-three racecourses that are state financed. The tradition of racecourses dates back from the ancient times, and they are an important presence throughout the Middle Ages and Renaissance. There are two historical racecourses that are still possible to visit: the Capannelle in Rome, inaugurated in 1881, and the Caprilli in Livorno, which was built 1894.
Besides the horse races that take place at the various racecourses scattered throughout Italy, the most famous horse race actually takes place not in a racecourse but in the piazza del Campo of Siena, a city in Tuscany. The *Palio di Siena*, also called simply *il Palio,* is held twice a year in July and August. About ten horses and riders, bareback and dressed in the colors of the *contrade* (streets) of Siena, circle three times the *Piazza* on which a thick layer of earth or sand is laid for the occasion. Before the race, the *Corteo Storico*, a wonderful pageant, takes place. The *Palio* di Siena is a great event that you don't want to miss during a summer in Italy.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #21

Are You Too Busy for Italian Aperitivo?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#21

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Jack : Vieni a prendere l'aperitivo al bar nel tardo pomeriggio?
2. Claudio : No, mi dispiace, devo lavorare fino a tardi. Devo stare in ufficio fino alle 5, andare a casa di corsa, fare una doccia e incontrare un cliente per cena. Oh no, il mio collega deve ancora prenotare il ristorante. Esco con te domani sera, ok?
3. Jack : Certo, non c'è problema!

ENGLISH

1. Jack : Will you come and have an aperitif at the bar in the late afternoon?
2. Claudio : No, I'm sorry, I have to work until late. I have to be in the office until five p.m., and then run home, take a shower, and meet a client for dinner. Oh no, my colleague still has to book the restaurant. I'll go out with you tomorrow night, OK?
3. Jack : Sure, no problem!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
fino a	to, till, until, as far as	preposition, phrase	
prenotare	to reserve	verb	
tardo	late, slow	adjective	
uscire	to go out	verb	
cliente	customer, client, guest	noun	
aperitivo	aperitif	noun	masculine
incontrare	to meet	verb	
fare la doccia	shower	phrase	
collega	coworker	noun	masculine
andare di corsa	to run	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Niente dolce per te fino a che non finisci la cena.	Andiamo fino a casa di Mario.
"No dessert for you until you finish your dinner."	"Let's go to Mario's home."

Dobbiamo prenotare due mesi prima, se vogliamo lo sconto. "We have to reserve two months earlier, if we want the discount."	Se possibile, prenota sempre in anticipo. "If possible, always reserve in advance."
Giacomo torna a casa da scuola in tarda mattinata. "Giacomo comes back home from school late in the morning."	Posso uscire? “May I go out?”
Sei uscito all'alba. "You went out at dawn."	Usciamo domenica sera verso le otto. "We will go out Sunday night around eight."
Domani sera esco con gli amici. "Tomorrow night I am going out with friends."	Il cliente ha sempre ragione. "The customer is always right."
L'aperitivo più famoso è il Campari. "The most famous aperitif is Campari."	Questo aperitivo è molto buono. "This aperitif is very good."
Dopo incontro Rossella. "I'll meet with Rossella later."	Ieri ho incontrato Luisa. "Yesterday I met Luisa."
Ho incontrato un vecchio amico. "I met an old friend."	fare la doccia alla mattina shower in the morning
L'uomo sta facendo la doccia la mattina. The man is showering in the morning.	L'uomo si sta facendo la doccia. The man is taking a shower.
L'uomo ha fatto la doccia la mattina. The man showered in the morning.	L'uomo fa la doccia la mattina. The man showers in the morning.
fare la doccia nella doccia shower in a shower	L'uomo ha fatto la doccia nella doccia. The man showered in the shower.
L'uomo fa la doccia nella doccia. The man showers in the shower.	L'uomo sta facendo la doccia nella doccia. The man is showering in the shower.
L'uomo si sta facendo una doccia. "The man is showering."	amico e collega friend and coworker
Vado a mangiare fuori con il mio collega ogni giovedì. I go out to eat with my coworker every Thursday.	I colleghi stanno facendo una riunione. The coworkers are having a meeting.

Dopo il lavoro vado a bere con i miei colleghi. "After work, I go to have a drink with my coworkers."	Sono d'accordo con il mio collega. "I agree with my co-worker."
È arrivato il nuovo collega. "The new coworker is here."	Devo andare di corsa all'incontro con le maestre. "I have to run to a meeting with the teachers."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

aperitivo
L'aperitivo is a drink people have before dinner. It can be alcoholic, like a glass of *prosecco*, or a soft drink. It is often served with food to nibble on. Recently, it has become popular to meet up after work with friends or co-workers and *prendere l'aperitivo* or *fare l'aperitivo* before dinner.

tardo

This word can be an adjective or an adverb. As an adjective, it declines like the *-o* ending adjectives.

For Example:

1. *tardo pomeriggio*
   "late afternoon"
2. *tarda serata*
   "late evening"

The adverb is *tardi* and it is unchangeable.

For Example:

1. *Arrivi sempre tardi.*
   "You always arrive late."

fare una doccia
Be aware that in Italian it is NOT possible to say *avere una doccia* or *prendere una doccia*.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Verb *Dovere* ("to Have to," "Must," or "to Owe").
Devo lavorare fino a tardi.
"I have to work until late."

The verb *dovere* means "to have to," "must," or "to owe." It is a modal verb and has an irregular conjugation.

Italian	"English"
io devo	"I must"
tu devi	"you must"
lui/lei deve	"he/she must"
noi dobbiamo	"we must"
voi dovete	"you must" (plural)
loro devono	"they must"

It is always followed by an infinitive verb (-*are*, -*ere*,- *ire*) and/ or by a direct object.

For Example:

1. *Devo incontrare un cliente per cena*.
   "I have to meet a client for dinner."
2. *Dovete già tornare a casa?*
   "Do you already have to go back home?"

- The verb *dovere* expresses an order from somebody else.

For Example:

1. *Luisa deve finire questo progetto prima di domani.*
   "Luisa has to finish this project before tomorrow."

- The verb *dovere* expresses a self-imposed duty.

For Example:

1. *Devo risparmiare tanto per comprare una casa.*
   "I must save a lot in order to buy a house."

- The verb *dovere* expresses a rule or regulation.

For Example:

1. *Qui devi guidare a 30 chilometri all'ora.*
   "Here you must drive at thirty kilometers per hour."

When the verb *dovere* is followed by a noun as a direct object, it means "to owe."

For Example:

1. *Devo due dollari a Giovanna.*
   "I owe two dollars to Giovanna."

In the negative form, the adverb *non* precedes the modal verb *dovere*. It means "to not need."

For Example:

1. *Non dobbiamo andare a scuola domani. E' festa.*
   "We don't need to go to school tomorrow. It's a holiday."
2. *Non devi cucinare stasera. Ho preso la pizza*.
   "You don't need to cook tonight. I got a pizza."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Aperitivo ("Aperitif")

An *aperitivo* is a pre-dinner drink, meant to "open" the palate. It also gives you a chance to relax and nibble as dinnertime approaches.
A good rule of thumb for evening *aperitivo* is to drink it between six p.m. to eight p.m. People in some regions drink it as late as nine p.m., however. Free food is offered with your drink, and every bar prepares something unique to accompany the drink. A few olives and potato chips are usually offered at your table or at the bar. Some places also prepare more snacks and even plates with focaccia or pizza, fruit salads, roasts, hot pasta, and cold cuts like prosciutto or *salame*. Some of the most popular drinks include Negroni (Campari, Martini Rosso vermouth, and gin), the Americano (Campari, Martini Rosso vermouth, and soda), or a spritz (Aperol or Campari and *prosecco*). In small bars, drink prices can be just the same as on the regular menu but the most famous ones are raised to include the price of the "free" food and are from around four euros up to fifteen euros per drink at some of Milan's more stellar hotels. The same flat rate charge can also be applied to beer, wine, and cocktails.
The *aperitivo* time is probably a great occasion to meet people and socialize when in Italy. People don't usually just sit at a table as it would be at a dinner party, but they often stand at the bar and walk around greeting people they know. It can also be a time to make new friends.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #22
Where Can I Find an ATM in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#22

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Scusi, c'è un bancomat qui vicino?
2. Passante : C'è una banca alla fine di questa via. Oppure vede quest'edificio rosso? Dentro, al primo piano forse c'è un bancomat. Non ricordo bene.
3. Mieke : Provo ad andare in quest'edificio . Grazie per le informazioni.
4. Passante : Non c'è di che.

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : Excuse me, is there an ATM nearby?
2. Passer-by : There is a bank at the end of this street. Or, do you see that red building? Inside, on the first floor there might be an ATM. I don't remember well.
3. Mieke : I'll try to go to this building. Thank you for the information.
4. Passer-by : You're welcome.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
banca	bank	noun	feminine
bancomat	ATM	noun	masculine
edificio	building	noun	masculine
non c'è di che	you're welcome	exclamatory expression	
ricordare	to remember, to not forget, to recall	verb	
via	street, road	noun	
piano	floor	noun	masculine
dentro	in, inside, within, by	preposition	
informazione	information	noun	feminine
fine	end	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La banca è chiusa.	vecchia banca
The bank is closed.	old bank

La banca non è aperta al pubblico di domenica. The bank is not open for business on Sundays.	La banca non è aperta di domenica. The bank is not open for business on Sundays.
Sto cercando una banca. "I'm looking for a bank."	Ieri dei ladri sono entrati in una banca. "Yesterday, some thieves entered a bank."
Domani ritirerò soldi al bancomat. "I'll withdraw money at the ATM tomorrow."	Il fiorista è in un edificio vecchio. The flower store is in an old building.
edificio nuovo new building	edificio medico medical building
Dall'alto di quest'edificio puoi vedere tutta la città. "From the top of this building you can see the whole city."	Non c'è di che! E' il mio lavoro. "You're welcome! It's my job."
Hai pensato che non mi sarei ricordata del tuo compleanno. "You thought I wouldn't remember your birthday."	Non mi ricordo cosa ho mangiato ieri. "I don't remember what I ate yesterday."
Ricordati di fare i compiti. "Don't forget to do your homework."	Prendi la prima via a sinistra e troverai il museo. "Take the first street on the left and you'll find the museum."
Abito al primo piano del mio condiminio. I live on the first floor of my apartment building.	secondo piano second floor
Vivi al quinto piano, no? "You live on the fifth floor, don't you?"	Vivo al terzo piano. "I live on the third floor."
Andiamo dentro la chiesa. "Let's go inside the church."	Mi può dare alcune informazioni sulla stagione concertistica? "Can you give me some information about the concert season?"
Alla fine abbiamo optato per il modello più nuovo. "In the end we chose the newest model."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

piano

Piano means "floor." Please be aware that in Italian, we use ordinal numbers with the word *piano*. The preposition required is *a.*

For Example:

1. *al secondo piano*
   "on the second floor"

Also remember that in Italy the first floor is the *piano terra* (as in B.E. ground floor), and the second floor is the *primo piano*.

ricordare

Ricordare both means "to remember" and "to remind."

For Example:

1. *Non ricordo il tuo nome.*
   "I don't remember your name."
2. *Questa casa mi ricorda la mia infanzia.*
   "This house reminds me of my childhood."

informazione

In Italian, the word *informazione* can be singular and plural. Here is an example of how to use it as a plural noun.

For Example:

1. *Non ci sono molte informazioni riguardo la guerra in Siria.*
   "There is not much information about the war in Syria."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of the Demonstrative Adjectives *Questo.*
C'è una banca alla fine di questa via.
"There is a bank at the end of this street."

The demonstrative adjective *questo* translates as the English word "this." It refers to something or someone close to the speaker.

We always place it before the noun, and it agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Look at the following chart:

	Masculine	Feminine
Singular	*questo, quest'*	*questa, quest'*
Plural	*questi*	*queste*

If it refers to a masculine singular number: *questo*

For Example:

1. *Quest**o** giardin**o** è molto bello.*
   "This garden is very beautiful."

If it refers to a feminine singular noun: *questa*

For Example:

1. *Quest**a** cas**a** è troppo piccola.*
   "This house is too small."

If it refers to a masculine plural noun: *questi*

For Example:

1. *Non mi piacciono quest**i** pantalon**i**.*
   "I don't like these pants."

If it refers to a feminine plural noun: *queste*

For Example:

1. *Hai cucinato queste tre torte?*
   "Did you cook these three cakes?"

When *questo/a* is followed by a noun beginning with a vowel, it makes an elision. It drops the last *-o/-a*, whose place is taken by an apostrophe.

For Example:

1. *Quest'uomo si chiama Giovanni Rossi.*
   "This man's name is Giovanni Rossi."
2. *Quest'auto è vecchia.*
   "This car is old."

Questi and *queste* in front of a noun beginning with a vowel do not have any phonetic changes.

For Example:

1. *Questi orecchini sono un regalo di Luca.*
   "These earrings are a present from Luca."
2. *Mi piacciono molto queste orchidee bianche.*
   "I like these white orchids very much."

Be aware that we sometimes shorten *questo* and *questa* to *sto* and *sta*, and we can find them in expressions like *stamattina* ("this morning"), *stasera* ("this evening"), and *stanotte* ("tonight"), while *sto pomeriggio* is rare and only colloquial.

For Example:

1. *Che cosa fai stamattina?*
   "What are you doing this morning?"
2. *Stasera vado a un concerto.*
   "This evening I'm going to a concert."

3. *Stanotte devo lavorare.*
   "Tonight I have to work."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Come Usare il Bancomat in Italia ("Using an ATM in Italy")

We call an ATM Bancomat in Italian, and we usually find it outside banks or in airports and train stations. The airport ATM might be empty at times and get refilled only on working days. The Italian banking association has an efficient ATM locator on its website. These ATMs are in Italian only but are fairly easy to use. The sign for Bancomat is usually blue and has the word *bancomat* and a big blue B on it. The process for withdrawing money is very similar to any other country. Once you insert your card, you will be prompted to choose your language. English will be one of the choices. Then you'll enter your four-digit pin number, and then you'll be presented with a number of choices for withdrawal, with usually a maximum of 250 euros for foreign cards. Choose the one that suits you. Otherwise, if you have trouble with your card, you can visit the bank, but please keep in mind that bank opening hours are mornings and only a few hours in the afternoon. It's also important to be aware that banks exchange money only for their customers.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #23
Furnishing Your Italian Home

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#23

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Adoro i negozi di arredamento. Vorrei trovare un soprammobile per il mio salottino. Magari una lampada italiana da portare in Belgio al mio rientro.
2. Laura : Che ne dici di quella lampada? È di Cassina, un classico del design italiano.
3. Mieke : Mi sembra troppo grande per la mia stanza. Oh, hai visto quel vaso in vetro rosso? Sembra vetro di Murano. È favoloso, ma probabilmente un po' caro. E quello specchio?
4. Laura : Eh, compri tutto il negozio?

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : I love furniture shops. I'd like to find some paraphernalia for my little living room. Maybe an Italian lamp I can take back to Belgium when I return.
2. Laura : How about that lamp? It's by Cassina, a classic of Italian interior design.
3. Mieke : It's too big for the room. Oh, did you see that red glass vase? It looks like a vase from Murano. It's fabulous, but probably a bit expensive. And that mirror?
4. Laura : Ah ah, will you buy the entire store?

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
salottino	little living room	noun	
probabilmente	probably, perhaps	adverb	
lampada	lamp	noun	feminine
specchio	mirror	noun	masculine
stanza	room	noun	feminine
arredamento	furniture	noun	
troppo	too much	adverb and adjective	
classico	classic	verb	
vetro	glass	noun	
portare	to bring, take	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

E’ molto carino ed intimo questo tuo salottino! "This little living room of yours is very nice and cosy!"	Probabilmente arrivo in ritardo. "I'll probably arrive late."
Probabilmente andrò a studiare in Cina l'anno prossimo. "Next year, I'll probably go to study in China."	Accendi la lampada quando inizia a fare buio nella stanza. Turn on the lamp when it starts to get dark in the room.
accendere la lampada turn on the lamp	lampada rossa con paralume arancione red lamp with an orange lamp shade
Dove posso comperare una lampada per la notte? "Where can I buy a lamp for the night?"	Lo specchio è appeso alla parete. The mirror is hanging on the wall.
specchio rotondo round mirror	L'uomo sta strofinando lo specchio con uno straccio. The man is wiping the mirror with a rag.
guardarsi allo specchio look at oneself in the mirror	Lo specchio è appeso alla parete. "The mirror is hanging on the wall."
Hai rotto lo specchio. "You broke the mirror."	Questa stanza ha due finestre. "This room has two windows."
Questa è la mia stanza. "This is my room."	Domani andiamo in un negozio d’arredamento. "Tomorrow we’re going to a furniture shop."
Vorrei una birra ma non troppo fredda. "I’d like a beer but not too cold."	Non dovresti bere troppo vino. "You shouldn’t drink too much wine."
Ho bevuto troppo. "I drank too much."	Se prendi un abito di taglio classico non sbagli mai. "If you buy a classic cut suit, you can never go wrong."
I vasi in vetro di Murano sono tutti lavorati a mano. "The glass vases of Murano are all handmade."	Puoi portare il vino? "Can you bring the wine?"
Mi porti il conto, per favore. "Bring me the check, please."	Portami al mare domani! "Take me to the beach tomorrow!"

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

lampada

It is a feminine noun and translates as "lamp." There are different lamps: *lampada da tavolo* ("table lamp"), *lampada a terra* ("standing lamp"), and *lampadario* ("chandelier").

salottino

It is a "small living room." *Salotto* is the Italian masculine noun for "living room." The suffix *-ino* gives the idea of something "small."

For Example:

1. *cappello*
   "hat"
2. *cappellino*
   "small hat"

troppo

The adverb *troppo* means "too" and "too much." When placed in front of adjectives, it means "too." When alone, it means "too much." It is unchangeable.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Demonstrative Adjective *Quello.*
Hai visto quel vaso in vetro rosso?
"Have you seen that red glass vase?"

The demonstrative adjective *quello* translates to the English "that." It refers to something or someone far from the speaker and the listener.

We always place it before the noun, and it agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Look at the following chart:

	Masculine	Feminine	"English"
Singular	*quel, quello, quell'*	*quella, quell'*	"that"
Plural	*quei, quegli*	*quelle*	"those"

The demonstrative adjective *quello* follows the rules for the determinative article. So before a singular masculine noun that starts with *s-* + the consonant *-x*, *-y*, or *-z*, the adjective is *quello.*

For Example:

1. *Quello spagnolo è molto simpatico.*
   "That Spanish man is very friendly."

Before a singular masculine noun that starts with a vowel, the adjective is *quell'*.

For Example:

1. *Quell'ombrello è rotto.*
   "That umbrella is broken."

Before any other masculine singular noun, please use *quel.*

For Example:

1. *Quel tappeto è troppo piccolo.*
   "That carpet is too small."

Before a singular feminine noun, please use *quella.*

For Example:

1. *Quella lampada è un po' cara.*
   "That lamp is a bit expensive."

Before a singular feminine noun that starts with a vowel, the adjective to use is *quell'*.

For Example:

1. *Quell' automobile è vecchia.*
   "That car is old."

Let's now consider plural nouns.

Before a plural masculine noun that starts with *-s* + consonant, *-x*, *-y*, *-z*, and vowels, the adjective is *quegli.*

For Example:

1. *Quegli stivali sono stretti.*
   "Those boots are tight."

Before any other plural masculine noun, the adjective is *quei.*

For Example:

1. *Quei fiori rossi stanno bene sul balcone.*
   "Those red flowers look good on the balcony."

Before a plural feminine noun, please use *quelle.*

For Example:

1. *Quelle rose sono un regalo di Luca?*
   "Those roses are Luca's present?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Murano

Murano is an island in the Venetian laguna, located close to Venice. It is renowned around the world for its glass production. This activity started in 1291 where the oven necessary to produce the glass where all put on the island of Murano. At the time of the Serenissima, the Republic of Venice, the glass production was strictly controlled by the government. The glass makers were not allowed to leave Venice unless they had a special permit. The secrets of the Murano glass making had to be kept within the borders of the Venetian Republic, as glass goods were highly valuable and also exported. The glass makers also enjoyed special benefits, one of which was the right to marry daughters of noble men. Nowadays, it is very difficult to become a *maestro del vetro* ("glass master"). It takes years of apprenticeship, and the secrets of this art are often transmitted from father to son and father to son only. A master often works with two apprentices who hold a long metal reed while the maestro blows the glass while hot. It is possible to visit a workshop in Murano and watch how glass is made thanks to the creative work of the *maestri del vetro*.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #24
Running Late for a Conference in Italy

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#24

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Mieke : Taxi! Buongiorno. Hotel Astor, per favore. È lontano?
2. Tassista : No, è appena fuori Torino, nella zona del Lingotto. Va alla fiera?
3. Mieke : No, vado a una conferenza di Slow Food. Purtroppo sono terribilmente in ritardo. Quanto ci vuole?
4. Tassista : Da qui ci vogliono circa venti minuti.
5. Mieke : Arriverò appena in tempo.
6. Tassista : Oggi c'è poco traffico. Forse impieghiamo meno tempo.

ENGLISH

1. Mieke : Taxi! Good morning. Hotel Astor, please. Is it far?
2. Taxi driver : No, it's just outside Turin, in the area of Lingotto. Are you going to the Fair?
3. Mieke : No, I'm going to a Slow Food conference. Unfortunately, I'm terribly late. How long does it take?
4. Taxi driver : From here, it takes about twenty minutes.
5. Mieke : I'll get there just in time.
6. Taxi driver : Today there is not much traffic. Maybe it will take us less time.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
fuori	out, outside	adverb	
traffico	traffic	noun	masculine
tassista	taxi driver	noun	
meno	less	adverb	
volerci	to take (as in time)	verb	
lontano	far, distant	adjective	
terribilmente	terribly	adverb	
purtroppo	unfortunately	adverb	
in tempo	in time	adverb	
zona	area	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Oggi fuori è molto freddo. "Today it's very cold outside."	Francesca abita fuori città. "Francesca lives out of the city."
È meglio tenere la spazzatura fuori casa. "It is better to keep the garbage out of the house."	Oggi c'è molto traffico sull'autostrada. "Today, there's a lot of traffic on the highway."
C'è sempre traffico in centro. "There is always traffic downtown."	Luisa fa la tassista da 10 anni. "Luisa has been a taxi driver for 10 years."
Dovrei pagare meno per questo servizio. "I should pay less for this service."	Sono meno grasso adesso. "I am less fat now."
Da Milano a Venezia ci vogliono tre ore di treno. "From Milan to Venice it takes three hours by train."	Voglio andare lontano da qui. "I want to go far from here."
Sono lontano da casa. "I'm far from home."	Sono terribilmente stanco! Voglio riposare un po'. "I'm terribly tired! I want to rest a little."
Purtroppo ho dimenticato le chiavi a casa. "Unfortunately, I forgot the keys at home."	Purtroppo il concerto è già finito. "Unfortunately, the concert finished already."
Se ti sbrighi, arriverai in tempo. "If you hurry up, you'll get there in time."	Questa zona è largamente conosciuta per l'alto tasso di criminalità. "This area is widely known for its high crime rate. "
Potresti abitare in questa bella zona di Brescia. "You could live in this nice area of Brescia."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

tassista

The word *tassista* is an Italianization of the English word "taxi" plus the suffix *-ista*, the most common ending for jobs. It is both a masculine and feminine noun (*il*/*la tassista*).

volerci

It means "to take" in terms of time. A synonym is *impiegarci*. They are both followed by nouns that indicate time like *minuti* ("minutes"), *ore* ("hours"), or *tempo* ("time").

in tempo

It means "in time" or "soon enough."

For Example:

1. *Spero di arrivare in tempo.*
   "I hope I can arrive in time."

A similar expression in Italian is *in orario.*

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Verbs *Volerci* and *Impiegare.*
Da qui ci vogliono circa venti minuti.
"From here it takes about twenty minutes."
Forse impieghiamo meno tempo.
"Maybe it will take less time."

Volerci

Volerci translates into English as "to take time." The infinitive mood of the verb *volerci* looks different from the usual *-are*, *-ere*, and *-ire* ending. That is because the verb *volere* ("to want") is combined with the pronoun *ci.* In the dictionary, you will find *volerci.*

For Example:

1. *Ci vuole un'ora per arrivare a Roma.*
   "It takes one hour to get to Rome."
2. *Ci vogliono anni per imparare a suonare il pianoforte.*
   "It takes years to learn how to play the piano."

There are only two forms of the verb *volerci*:

1. *Ci vuole* + singular noun

2. *Ci vogliono* + plural noun

The verb *volerci* is always followed by expressions of time: *ora/e* ("hours"), *giorno/i* ("days"), *mese/i* ("months"), *anno/i* ("years"), *tanto* ("a lot of"), *poco tempo* ("a little" or "short time"), etc.

For Example:

1. *Ci vuole un mese per preparare questo esame.*
   "It takes a month to prepare for this exam."
2. *Ci vogliono 12 ore con un volo diretto da Milano.*
   "It takes twelve hours on a direct flight from Milan."

When using *volerci*, the subject of the sentence is the noun following the verb *volerci* and therefore the only possible forms are *ci vuole* + singular noun and *ci vogliono* + plural noun.

Impiegare

Impiegare translates into English as "to take time." *Impiegare* is a regular verb that follows the declination of the verbs ending in *-are*.

Italian	"English"
io impiego	"I take time"
tu impieghi	"you take time"
lui/lei impiega	"he/she takes time"
noi impieghiamo	"we take time"
voi impiegate	"you take time" (plural)
loro impiegano	"they take time"

When using *impiegare,* the subject of the sentence can be I, you, he/she, we, you, or they, and therefore all the forms of the verbs are possible. The expression of time (one hour, four years, twenty days, etc.) becomes the object.

For Example:

1. *Impiego due ore per arrivare al lavoro.*
   "It takes me two hours to get to work."
2. *Quanto tempo impieghiamo a preparare questa ricetta?*
   "How long does it take us to prepare this recipe?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Slow Food

Slow Food is an international movement founded by Carlo Petrini in 1986.
As the name suggests, it is an alternative to the fast-food lifestyle. It promotes the production and consumption of locally grown and organic food and is against genetically modified foods.
The movement started in Italy to preserve traditional and regional cuisine. Today, the movement exists in 150 countries and has more than 100,000 members. It also pays a lot of attention to educating the younger generations in learning how to cook rather than buying ready-made meals.
Several workshops and activities are held in schools and supermarkets, squares, farms, and of course, at the *Saloni del gusto* ("food fairs").
One of the most popular mottos is *Mangia bene e cresci meglio* ("Eat well and grow healthily").

LESSON NOTES

Lower Beginner S1 #25
Making Plans for the Holidays in Italy

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Vocabulary phrase usage
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#25

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Carla : Domani è festa, per fortuna! Si può dormire di più la mattina.
2. Laura : Beata te. Siccome è festa, io lavoro il doppio in pasticceria. È meglio andare a dormire presto stasera. Però a Natale faccio un bel viaggio.
3. Carla : Ma come!? A Natale si sta in famiglia, si aprono i regali, si mangia il panettone tutti insieme...
4. Laura : Che noia! Sempre le stesse cose! Vorrei rilassarmi...
5. Carla : Perché non parti per Capodanno? Anzi andiamo insieme!

ENGLISH

1. Carla : Tomorrow is a holiday, thank God! I can sleep longer in the morning.
2. Laura : Lucky you. Because it's a holiday, I work double at the patisserie. It's better to go to bed early tonight. But at Christmas I'll take a long trip!
3. Carla : What? At Christmas, one should stay with the family, open presents, and all eat panettone together...
4. Laura : How boring! It's always the same! I'd like to relax...
5. Carla : Why don't you leave around New Year's? Actually let's go together!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
dormire	to sleep	verb	
si	one	pronoun	
per fortuna	fortunately	adverb	
aprire	to open	noun	
bello	nice, good	adjective	
festa	feast, holiday, party	noun	feminine
meglio	better	adjective, adverb	
doppio	double	numeral adjective	
stare	to be, to stand, to lie, to be located, to be situated	verb	
beato te!	lucky you!	exclamation	
partire	to leave, to start, to take off	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La domenica mio fratello dorme fino a mezzogiorno. "On Sundays, my brother sleeps until midday."	Il gatto dorme. "The cat is sleeping."
Ieri ho dormito tutto il giorno. "Yesterday, I slept all day long."	Da questa finestra si vede un bel panorama. "From this window one sees a beautiful landscape/From this window you can see a beautiful landscape. "
Sta piovendo: per fortuna abbiamo un ombrello. "It’s raining: fortunately we’ve got an umbrella."	E' Natale, apriamo i regali! "It's Christmas, let's open the presents!"
Fa troppo caldo, apri la finestra? "It's too hot. Can you open the window?"	Devo aprire il negozio alle otto del mattino. "I have to open the store at 8:00 o'clock a.m."
Quella casa è bella. "That house is nice."	Quel quadro è molto bello. "That picture is very nice."
Questa festa è proprio noiosa! "This party is really boring!"	Benvenuti alla mia festa di compleanno. "Welcome to my birthday party."
Facciamo una festa? "Shall we have a party?"	E' meglio così. "It's better this way."
Con la carne è meglio vino rosso o bianco? "With meat, is red or white wine better?"	Meglio di niente. "Better than nothing."
Anche se sono in pensione, a casa lavoro il doppio. "Even if I am retired, I work double at home."	Come stanno Luigi e Anna? "How are Luigi and Anna?"
Sto male. "I am ill. I am not well."	Beato te! Tu puoi divertirti oggi, mentre io devo lavorare. "Lucky you! You can enjoy yourself today, while I have to work."
Domani partirò per Milano. "I'll leave for Milan tomorrow."	Sono partito alle sei del mattino. "I left at six o'clock a.m."
Domani parto per Roma. "Tomorrow, I am leaving for Rome."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

festa

We use *festa* as a translation of "holiday" or "national holiday."

For Example:

1. *Il primo di novembre è festa*.
   "The first of November is a national holiday."

It also means "party."

For Example:

1. *Facciamo una festa per il compleanno di Samuele*.
   "Let's have a party for Samuele's birthday."

dormire

There is no exact translation for the English "to sleep in." The closest is *dormire di più*, which would literally be "to sleep more."

partire

The verb *partire* means "to leave" or "to depart." The noun is *partenza* and on the timetable board at the train stations or airports it says *partenze*. The opposite is *arrivare* and the noun is *arrive* (plural: *arrivi*).

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Usage of the Impersonal Form.
A Natale si aprono i regali.
"At Christmas, one opens presents."
A Natale si mangia il panettone con la famiglia.
"At Christmas, one eats panettone with the family."

We construct the impersonal form as follows:

The impersonal pronoun *si* + verb third-person singular or plural

If the noun that follows the verb is singular, the verb declines in the third-person singular.

For Example:

1. *In Inghilterra si beve molto te'.*
   "In England, people drink a lot of tea."

If the noun is plural, the verb declines in the third-person plural.

For Example:

1. *In Italia si mangiano gli spaghetti quasi ogni giorno*.
   "In Italy, people eat spaghetti almost every day."

The impersonal form corresponds to the English "one," though it is much more frequent in Italian than it is in English where we also use "you," "we," "people," and other expressions to translate the same idea.

For Example:

1. *Come si dice "buongiorno" in giapponese?*
   "How does one say 'good morning' in Japanese?/How do you say 'good morning' in Japanese?"

In constructing the impersonal form, we use *si*:

- When the subject is generic

For Example:

1. *In Italia si beve molto caffè.*
   "In Italy, we/the Italians/people drink a lot of coffee."

- To make generalizations

For Example:

1. *In agosto si va al mare.*
   "In August, people go to the seaside."

- To describe customs and traditions of a country

For Example:

1. *A Pasqua si mangia l'agnello e la colomba.*
   "At Easter, people eat lamb and *colomba* cake."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

***Tradizioni di Natale, Capodanno e Pasqua* ("Traditions at Christmas, New Year's, and Easter")**

The biggest *feste* or "festivities" in the calendar year are probably Christmas, New Year's, and Easter. Traditions and customs for these three main festivities change from region to region and sometimes even from town to town, but it is possible to highlight some traditions that are shared by all Italians. Christmas is a time to spend with family. Most Italians celebrating *Natale* decorate their houses with a nativity scene or a Christmas tree. They may go to church at midnight on Christmas Eve and spend Christmas day with their dear ones around a table with poultry and sweets like *panettone*, a type of sweet bread loaf with raisins and candied orange zest, originally from Milan. Young people spend New Year's Eve with friends rather than with family. They often go to a house party and then wait for midnight to strike in the town square where at the change of the year there is always a display of fireworks. Traditional food to eat for New Year's Eve includes boiled *zampone* ("pig's leg"), *lenticchie* ("lentils"), and *uva* ("grapes"). Lentils and grapes are supposed to bring money.

Natale con i tuoi, Pasqua con chi vuoi! We translate this famous saying as "Christmas with your family and Easter with whomever you want." Some people also spend Easter with family eating lamb and *colomba*, a soft cake in the shape of a dove. Traditionally, chocolate eggs are opened in the morning and are a favorite Easter pastime. Others prefer to go away for the Easter weekend, taking advantage of the first rays of the spring sun.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #1

Italian Transitive Verbs: She Beat Up That Little Boy!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#1

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Pronto?
2. John : Ciao Laura, come stai?
3. Laura : Ciao, io sto bene e tu?
4. John : Anch'io, grazie. Cosa fai?
5. Laura : Lavo i piatti e tu?
6. John : Guardo la televisione, ma non c'è nulla di divertente.
7. Laura : Perché non ascolti un podcast?
8. John : Hai ragione! Ora cerco un podcast interessante. Grazie. Ciao.
9. Laura : Ciao.

ENGLISH

1. Laura : Hello?
2. John : Hello Laura, how are you?
3. Laura : Hi, I'm fine. And you?
4. John : Me too, thanks. What are you doing?
5. Laura : I'm washing the dishes. And you?
6. John : I'm watching television but there's nothing fun.
7. Laura : Why don't you listen to a podcast?
8. John : You are right! I'm going to look for an interesting podcast. Thanks. Bye.
9. Laura : Bye.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
televisione	television	noun	
podcast	podcast	noun	
interessante	interesting	adjective	masculine, feminine
ascoltare	to listen	verb	
guardare	to look, to watch, to look at	verb	
lavare	to wash, to clean, to brush	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La televisione non funziona. "The television isn't working."	Italianpod101.com è un podcast fantastico. "Italianpod101.com is a fantastic podcast."
E' un'idea interessante quella che hai presentato in riunione. That's an interesting idea you presented at the meeting.	idea interessante interesting idea
La donna sta ascoltando una storia interessante. The woman is listening to an interesting story.	È una teoria molto interessante. "It is a very interesting theory."
Mi piace ascoltare la musica classica. "I like listening to the classical music."	Mi piace ascoltare la radio prima di andare a dormire. "I like to listen to the radio before going to sleep."
Ascoltiamo il discorso di Mario. "We are listening to Mario's speech."	Ascolta bene! "Listen well!"
Non ascoltare musica a volume alto. "Don't listen to music out loud."	Guardami mentre parlo. "Look at me when I'm talking to you."
Di solito non guardo nessuno sport, ma ieri ho fatto un'eccezione. "Usually, I don't watch any sports but I made an exception yesterday."	La domenica molti italiani guardano il calcio in TV. "On Sunday a lot of Italian people watch soccer on TV."
Guardi la tv? "Are you watching TV?"	Guardiamo un film italiano? "Shall we watch an Italian movie?"
Mi lavo i denti tutte le sere prima di dormire. "I brush my teeth every night before sleeping."	Lavo la camicia. "I'm washing the shirt."

GRAMMAR

Transitive Verbs
Lavo i piatti e tu?
"I'm washing the dishes. And you?"

Transitive Verbs are those verbs, which a *complemento oggetto* (direct object) follows. This means that the action falls on an object and it doesn't stay on the subject itself.

For instance:

1. *Lucia sta leggendo un romanzo.*
   "Lucia is reading a novel."
2. *Mario mangia una mela.*
   "Mario is eating an apple."
3. *Serena canta una canzone.*
   "Serena is singing a song."

We may use transitive verbs in absolute term. This happens when a direct object does not follow the transitive verb. In this case, the verb simply indicates what action the subject performs.

Taking the examples above:

1. *Lucia sta leggendo.*
   "Lucia is reading."
2. *Mario mangia.*
   "Mario is eating."
3. *Serena canta.*
   "Serena is singing."

When used in absolute terms, we should not mistake transitive verbs for intransitive verbs. The best method to identify transitive verbs is to ask ourselves whether a direct object may follow them or not, even if we use them in general terms. In other words, we should ask ourselves "what?"

For example, if we read a sentence such as *Francesco cucina* ("Francesco is cooking"), we should ask ourselves "could he be cooking pasta, rice, or something else? Of course, he can! Therefore, *cucinare* is a transitive verb.

We cannot use all transitive verbs in absolute terms. For example, we don't normally say *Mike guarda* ("Mike is looking at/watching"). Although we know what action he is performing, this mere fact does not make a meaningful sentence.

The following table presents some of the most commonly used Italian transitive verbs:

Italian	"English"
abbracciare	"to hug"
accendere	"to switch, turn on"
accettare	"to accept"
aiutare	"to help"
amare	"to love"
ascoltare	"to hear, listen to"
battere	"to beat, hit, strike"
bloccare	"to block"
bruciare	"to burn"
cacciare	"to hunt"
calcolare	"to calculate, compute"
calmare	"to calm down"
cambiare	"to change"
cancellare	"to cancel, delete"
capire	"to understand"
capovolgere	"to turn upside-down"
caricare	"to load"
catturare	"to capture"
cavalcare	"to ride"
cercare	"to search for, look for"
chiamare	"to call"
chiedere	"to ask"
chiudere	"to close"
combattere	"to fight"
colpire	"to hit"
definire	"to define"
deporre	"to deposit, lay down"
descrivere	"to describe"
difendere	"to defend"
dipingere	"to paint"
dividere	"to divide"
elevare	"to raise, lift up"
eliminare	"to eliminate"
esaminare	"to examine"

evitare	"to avoid"
fermare	"to stop"
formare	"to form; make"
fotografare	"to photograph"
generare	"to generate"
gestire	"to manage"
gettare	"to throw, cast"
guardare	"to look at"
guidare	"to drive"
identificare	"to identify"
ignorare	"to ignore"
imbottire	"to stuff, pad"
imitare	"to emulate; imitate"
impiegare	"to use"
indicare	"to point, indicate"
informare	"to inform"
iniziare	"to start, initiate"
interrompere	"to interrupt"
lasciare	"to leave"
lavare	"to wash"
legare	"to tie (up)"
liberare	"to free"
lodare	"to praise"
lusingare	"to flatter"
mangiare	"to eat"
memorizzare	"to memorize"
misurare	"to measure, gauge"
modificare	"to modify"
mostrare	"to show"
muovere	"to move"
nascondere	"to hide"
noleggiare	"to hire"
nutrire	"to feed"
occupare	"to occupy"
offendere	"to offend"

ospitare	"to host"
osservare	"to observe"
ostacolare	"to hamper, hinder"
ottenere	"to get, obtain"
pagare	"to pay"
paragonare	"to compare"
perdonare	"to forgive"
pesare	"to weight"
piegare	"to bend"
preferire	"to prefer"
prendere	"to take"
promettere	"to promise"
provare	"to try"
pulire	"to clean"
punire	"to punish"
rappresentare	"to represent"
reggere	"to hold (up), bear"
respingere	"to reject"
ricevere	"to receive"
rimuovere	"to remove, take off"
riscaldare	"to warm up"
salutare	"to greet"
salvare	"to save"
scegliere	"to choose"
scordare	"to forget"
seguire	"to follow"
soccorrere	"to aid, assist"
spingere	"to push"
stringere	"to grip, clench"
tenere	"to have, hold, keep"
tirare	"to pull"
trovare	"to find"
uccidere	"to kill, murder"
udire	"to hear"
unire	"to join, unite"

usare	"to use"
vedere	"to see"
vendere	"to sell"
visitare	"to visit"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Fontana dei quattro fiumi
The Fountain of Four Rivers

Gianlorenzo Bernini realized the *fontana dei quattro fiumi* (the Fountain of Four Rivers) under the patronage of Pope Innocenzo X. The fountain represents an allegory of the pacification role the pope was meant to have between rival nations in the world. The dove of peace is located on the top of its obelisk. A great rock is located at the centre of the fountain. It has four large protuberances, which embody the most representative rivers of the four known continents (Australia had not yet been discovered).

The four rivers represented are: the Nile for Africa, the Ganges for Asia, the Danube for Europe, and the Rio de la Plata for the American continent. A hood shrouds the head of the Nile to represent that its springs are unknown. Ganges holds a long oar symbolizing its perfect navigability. Flowers crown the Danube. Rio de la Plata looks at a snake while protecting a chest full of treasures, showing a worried expression. Legends about the true meaning of these postures abound and are part of the folklore of Rome.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #2

Italian Intransitive Verbs: I Like Swimming and Dancing!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#2

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Pronto?
2. Laura : Ciao John. Allora ascolti qualche podcast?
3. John : Veramente dormo.
4. Laura : Ma come, non esci? È una così bella giornata.
5. John : Uscire? No, oggi ozio tutto il giorno.
6. Laura : Allora buon riposo, ma non russare troppo.
7. John : Io non russo!
8. Laura : Ciao.

ENGLISH

1. John : Hello?
2. Laura : Hello, John. So, are you listening to the podcasts?
3. John : Actually, I'm sleeping.
4. Laura : How come? You're not going out? It's such a nice day.
5. John : Go out? No, today I'm lazing around all day.
6. Laura : Then have a nice rest, but don't snore too much.
7. John : I don't snore!
8. Laura : Bye.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
giornata	day	noun	feminine
russare	to snore	verb	
oziare	to laze around, lie around, lounge	verb	
riposo	rest, sleep	noun	masculine
dormire	to sleep	verb	
bello	nice, good	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ho passato tutta la giornata a casa. "I spent the whole day at home."	Oggi è stata una giornata lunghissima. "Today has been a very long day."
Oggi è proprio una bella giornata. "Today is really a good day."	Luca russa tutte le sere. "Luca snores every evening."
È bello oziare durante le vacanze. "It's nice to laze around during holidays."	Il riposo è sacro. "Rest is sacred."
La domenica mio fratello dorme fino a mezzogiorno. "On Sundays, my brother sleeps until midday."	Il gatto dorme. "The cat is sleeping."
Ieri ho dormito tutto il giorno. "Yesterday, I slept all day long."	Quella casa è bella. "That house is nice."
Quel quadro è molto bello. "That picture is very nice."	

GRAMMAR

Intransitive Verbs
Veramente dormo.
“Actually, I’m sleeping.”

Intransitive verbs are those verbs, which a direct object cannot follow.

For example:

1. *John dorme.*
   "John is sleeping."
2. *Mary è arrivata a casa.*
   "Mary arrived at home."
3. *Franco sta correndo.*
   "Franco is running."

Intransitive verbs describe either emotional or physical states of being, or actions whose effects fall on the subject. Certain intransitive verbs become transitive when the so-called "internal direct object" follows after them. An internal direct object is a noun whose meaning is strictly related to that of the verb.

For instance:

1. *Ho dormito sonni tranquilli.*
   "I slept easy."
2. *Mio nonno ha vissuto una vita felice.*
   "My grandfather lived a happy life."
3. *Lei sta piangendo lacrime amare.*
   "She's shedding bitter tears."

In compound tenses, the majority of intransitive verbs referring to emotional and physical states require the auxiliary *essere* (to be). There are important exceptions to this guideline (i.e., it's not a proper grammatical rule). The best way to find out the auxiliary of the main verb remains to look it up in a good dictionary. The following list provides you with the most commonly used Italian intransitive verbs:

Italiano	"English"
abbaiare	"to bark"
abusare	"to abuse"
accadere	"to happen"
acconsentire	"to consent, allow"
agire	"to act"
alloggiare	"to house, reside"
andare	"to go to"
assistere	"to tend to (someone)"
avvenire	"to happen"
badare	"to take care of"
barare	"to cheat"
bastare	"to be enough, sufficient"
brillare	"to shine"
bussare	"to knock"
cadere	"to fall down"
camminare	"to walk"
cessare	"to cease"
colare	"to drip"
conferire	"to confer"
consistere	"to consist"
correre	"to run"
danzare	"to dance"
deperire	"to waste (away)"
dimagrire	"to lose weight"
dipendere	"to depend"
dissentire	"to disagree"
diventare	"to become"
dormire	"to sleep"
durare	"to last"
emigrare	"to emigrate"
entrare	"to enter, get in/inside"
esistere	"to exist"
esitare	"to waver, hesitate"
esplodere	"to explode"

fallire	"to fail"
finire	"to be over"
fiorire	"to flourish"
fischiare	"to whistle"
fuggire	"to flee, run away"
funzionare	"to work"
gelare	"to freeze"
gesticolare	"to gesticulate"
giocare	"to play"
godere	"to enjoy"
guarire	"to recover, heal"
immigrare	"to immigrate"
imprecare	"to swear"
indagare	"to enquire"
influire	"to influence"
ingrassare	"to put on weight"
interferire	"to interfere"
lievitare	"to rise, leaven"
litigare	"to argue, quarrel"
lottare	"to fight"
mancare	"to be lacking"
mendicare	"to beg"
mentire	"to lie"
morire	"to die"
nascere	"to be born"
nevicare	"to snow"
nuotare	"to swim"
occorrere	"to be needed, required"
oziare	"to laze around"
parere	"to seem"
parlare	"to talk to, speak with"
partire	"to leave"
persistere	"to insist on (doing something)"
piovere	"to rain"
pranzare	"to lunch"

protestare	"to protest"
puzzare	"to stink"
rabbrividire	"to shiver"
ragionare	"to reason"
reagire	"to react"
remare	"to row"
respirare	"to breathe"
ridere	"to laugh"
rinunciare	"to renounce, give up"
riposare	"to rest"
rotolare	"to roll"
russare	"to snore"
salire	"to go up"
sanguinare	"to bleed"
scampare	"to survive, escape"
scendere	"to go down"
sciare	"to ski"
scivolare	"to slip"
sedere	"to sit down"
servire	"to be useful/needed for"
somigliare	"to be like, look like"
sorgere	"to rise"
sorridere	"to smile"
sospirare	"to sigh"
sparire	"to disappear"
sputare	"to spit"
stare	"to be"
starnutire	"to sneeze"
strisciare	"to slither"
succedere	"to happen"
svenire	"to faint"
telefonare	"to phone"
tossire	"to cough"
tramontare	"to set"
transitare	"to transit"

tremare	"to tremble"
tuonare	"to thunder"
uscire	"to go out"
vagare	"to roam"
venire	"to come"
viaggiare	"to travel"
versare	"to pour"
vivere	"to live"
volare	"to fly"
zoppicare	"to limp"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Caesar vs. the Gallic King Vercingetorix

After Caesar managed to convince the Senate to renew his consular mandate in 54 B.C., the Gallic king Vercingetorix gathered many powerful northern tribes around his leadership and openly challenged the Roman rule over Gaul. He understood that Caesar was cunningly helping the tribes, who wanted to become part of the Roman Republic, making them pay for safety with freedom. The war between Caesar and Vercingetorix would be long and excruciating for both parts, ending with Caesar's triumph at the battle of Alesia (54 B.C.). The accounts of the war were later organized into an organic literary work, the famous *De Bello Gallico* (*On the Gallic War*).

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #3

Express Your Love in Italian This Valentine's Day!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#3

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Tra poco è il giorno di San Valentino.
2. Laura : Quindi?
3. John : Come festeggiate questa occasione in Italia?
4. Laura : Di solito le coppie si scambiano regali.
5. John : E cosa scrivono sui biglietti?
6. Laura : Di solito scrivono “Ti amo”.
7. John : Allora è come in America.

ENGLISH

1. John : It’s going to be Saint Valentine’s Day soon.
2. Laura : So?
3. John : How do you celebrate this occasion in Italy?
4. Laura : Couples usually exchange gifts.
5. John : And what do they write on the cards?
6. Laura : They usually write, “I love you.”
7. John : Then it’s as it is in America.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
tra poco	soon, shortly, in a little while	adverb
San Valentino	Saint Valentine	proper noun
coppia	couple, pair	noun
scambiare	to exchange, swap, barter, trade	verb
biglietto	ticket, note, card, banknote	noun
amare	to love	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Tra poco finisco. "I'll finish soon."	Ho ricevuto delle rose per San Valentino. "I received some roses for Saint Valentine's day."
Sono una bella coppia. "They are a nice couple."	Vuoi scambiare figurine? "Do you want to trade picture cards?"
Questo biglietto aereo è molto costoso. "This flight ticket is very expensive."	Ho un biglietto per te. "I have a card for you."
I Giapponesi amano passare il tempo libero nei parchi. "Japanese people love spending free time in the parks."	Ami il tuo ragazzo? "Do you love your boyfriend?"
Amo viaggiare. "I love traveling."	

GRAMMAR

Express Your Love in Italian
Di solito scrivono "Ti amo."
They usually write, "I love you."

When it comes to love-related issues, Italian language shows its richness in expressing different degrees of fondness. True friends often use the intransitive verb *volere bene*(*a*).

For example:

1. *Io voglio bene a mio fratello.*
   "I love my brother."
2. *Ti voglio bene.*
   "I love you."

However, the translation we provide above does not give justice to the true meaning of the Italian verb *volere bene,* which is something in between "to love somebody" and "to be fond of somebody."

We use the verb *amare* (to love), on the other hand, almost exclusively to convey the emotion we feel for our partner, whether it is a girlfriend/boyfriend or fiancée/fiancé. Italian males would never use it to express their affection to other men, not even to their best friends. Females, on the other hand, occasionally use it, but only with their best girlfriend.

When Italians, both men and women, want to make the difference between acquaintances and close friends, they employ the appellation *mio caro*/*mia cara* (my dear), or simply *caro* (dear).

For example:

1. *Ciao caro, cosa fai?*
   "Hi dear, what are you up to?"
2. *Sai, mia cara, ieri ho visto John.*
   "You know, my dear, yesterday I saw John."
3. *Carissimo, è da tanto che non ci vediamo!*
   "My dearest, long time no see!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Castel Sant'Angelo

The history of *Castel Sant'Angelo* (which translates as "the Castle of the Holy Angel") mirrors that of Rome in many aspects. Located in a suburban area of Rome, the massive structure was originally built as the mausoleum of the emperor Hadrianus. In 403 B.C., the emperor Onofrius enclosed it within the city walls as well as changed its function from that of a historical building to a stronghold, thus making it one of the city's most important bulwarks against invaders.

From that moment on, many notable Roman patrician families quarreled in order to take control of the defensive military structure, as it also guaranteed social influence in the chaotic political organization of Rome after the fall of the empire. In 1277, the Vatican acquired it in order to use it both as a papal residence in peaceful times and as a proper castle in more troubled periods.
The bronze angel, which the castle is named after, was made in the eighteenth century to commemorate an ancient legend that traces back to the plague of Rome in 590 B.C. The legend says that the plague stopped when an angel appeared above the castle and sheathed his sword, thus symbolizing God's benevolence and forgiveness.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #4

Italian Direct Object Pronouns: What's Wrong with You??

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Informal Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#4

DIALOGUE - INFORMAL ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Hai comprato il caffè?
2. Martina : Sì, l'ho comprato ieri.
3. Laura : Non lo trovo. Dove l'hai messo?
4. Martina : Ora lo cerco.
5. Laura : Ah, l'ho trovato!

ENGLISH

1. Laura : Did you buy coffee?
2. Martina : Yes, I bought it yesterday.
3. Laura : I can't find it. Where did you put it?
4. Martina : I'll look for it.
5. Laura : Ah, found it!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
mettere	to put, put on	verb	
caffè	coffee, espresso	noun	masculine
dove	where	adverb	
comprare	to buy, to purchase	verb	
trovare	to find	verb	
ieri	yesterday	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Puoi mettere la tua borsa sul tavolo. "You can put your bag on the table."	Ci ha messo troppe spezie e ora non è più commestibile. "He put in too many spices and now it is not edible anymore."

Puoi mettere la mia macchina fotografica sulla scrivania? "Can you put my camera on the desk?"	Dove metto la valigia? "Where shall I put the suitcase?"
Non mi piace il caffè. "I don't like coffee."	Non posso iniziare la giornata senza caffè. "I can't start the day without coffee."
Gli Italiani bevono raramente caffè freddo. "Italian people seldom drink iced coffee."	Un caffè macchiato, grazie. "A caffè macchiato, thank you." (Coffee with a small amount of hot milk)
Dove abiti? Where do you live?	Dove vai domani sera? "Where are you going tomorrow night?"
Dove sei stato? Where have you been?	Dove abiti? Where do you live?
Dove sei? Where are you?	Dove andiamo? Where are we going?
Comprerà una casa di fianco al fiume per il suo cane. "He will buy a house next to the river for his dog."	Compro sempre troppo cibo, quando ho fame. "I always buy too many groceries when I am hungry."
Vorrei comprare questo anello per la mia ragazza. "I'd like to buy this ring for my girlfriend."	Ho comprato della verdura e della carne per la cena di stasera. "I bought some vegetables and some meat for tonight's dinner."
Tu compri il pane. "You buy the bread."	Trovo questo libro molto interessante. "I find this book really interesting."
Sei riuscito a trovare la strada per l'accademia? "Were you able to find your way to the academy?"	Non trovo le chiavi. "I can't find my keys."
Ho trovato questo portafoglio. "I found this wallet."	Abbiamo trovato un cane in giardino. "We found a dog in the yard."
L'ho trovato! L'ho trovato! "I've found it! I've found it!"	Ieri era vacanza, quindi abbiamo avuto un giorno libero. Yesterday was a holiday, so we had the day off.
ieri pomeriggio yesterday afternoon	Ieri mi sono preso un giorno libero. I took a day off yesterday.

Ieri sono rimasto a casa. "Yesterday, I stayed at home."	Ieri siamo andati al pub. "Yesterday, we went to the pub."
Mi hai chiamato ieri? "Did you call me yesterday?"	Ieri sera sono uscito con Marta. "Yesterday evening, I went out with Marta."

GRAMMAR

Italian Direct Object Pronouns
Sì, l'ho comprato ieri.
"Yes, I bought it yesterday."

Either direct object nouns or direct object pronouns (*pronomi diretti*) follow transitive verbs. Direct object pronouns substitute object nouns that either we have previously mentioned, or that we can clearly infer from the context into which they are inserted. Object nouns or pronouns never follow intransitive verbs. There are two kinds of Italian direct object pronouns. Today, we shall see the first kind.

Pronomi Personali Atoni: "Unstressed Direct Object Pronouns"
Non lo trovo.
"I can't find it."

This is by far the most frequently used category. We use these pronouns when we wish to employ an object pronoun instead of a noun, but do not wish to stress it as the most important part of the sentence.

For instance:

1. *Il mio amico mangia un panino* (direct object noun) *al parco.*
   "My friend eats a sandwich at the park."
   Il mio amico lo (direct object pronoun) *mangia.*
   "My friend eats it."
2. *Apro una confezione* (direct object noun) *di cioccolatini.*
   "I open a chocolate box."
   La (direct object pronoun) *apro.*
   "I open it."

Please, note that since there is no neutral gender in Italian, nouns and pronouns can only be masculine or feminine. If you are unsure about what gender an English word belongs to in Italian, look it up in a good (preferably monolingual) dictionary.

The following scheme presents the Italian unstressed personal pronouns, along with the corresponding direct object and their English translation.

Pronome personale soggetto	Subject Personal Pronoun	*Pronome diretto atono*	Unstressed Direct Object Pronoun
Io	I	*Mi*	Me
Tu	You	*Ti*	You
Lui	He	*Lo*	Him
Lei	She	*La*	Her
*Lui/Lei**	It	*Lo/La*	It
Noi	We	*Ci***	Us
Voi	You	*Vi*	You
Loro	They	*Li* (masculine), *Le* (feminine)	Them

***Note:** Refers to the explanation above regarding the gender of nouns in Italian.
****Note:** Do not mistake the direct object pronoun *ci,* for the adverb *ci* meaning, "there."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The *Domus Aurea* or "Golden Residence"

The emperor Nero decided he would have his personal residence, the *Domus Aurea* (Golden Residence), built on the ashes of a terrible fire that broke out in Rome and destroyed the larger part of it (ten out of fourteen blocks) in 64 A.C. After years of constant work and lavish waste of public money, the ostentatiously magnificent royal house occupied nearly the whole center of Rome. Along with miles of rooms, corridors, and gardens, it also had a lake (the *lagus Neronis*, or "Lake of Nero") described by onlookers as being "as large as the sea." A satiric poet of that time wrote, "Rome is now just one house; if you need to find an accommodation move to Veius (a city close to Rome), hoping this house will not stretch up to there as well."
Nero took the oriental royal residences and the palaces of Alexander the Great as models for his residence. He had local artists make a sculpture of him as the god of Sun that was an incredible thirty-five meters tall. After the fall of the tyrant, angry mobs leveled the house leaving nothing but ashes behind; the same ashes upon which Nero built the house.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #5

Direct Object Pronouns Part 2: Sound Like Them in Italian!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Informal Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#5

DIALOGUE - INFORMAL ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Hai pagato le bollette?
2. Martina : Oddio, non le ho ancora pagate!
3. Laura : Entro quando dobbiamo pagarle?
4. Martina : Ora guardo. Entro giovedì prossimo.
5. Laura : Siamo ancora in tempo.
6. Martina : Vado domani mattina presto.

ENGLISH

1. Laura : Did you pay the bills?
2. Martina : My goodness, I still haven't paid them!
3. Laura : By when do we have to pay them?
4. Martina : Let me see, by next Thursday.
5. Laura : We are still in time.
6. Martina : I'll go early tomorrow morning.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
prossimo	next, upcoming, forthcoming	adjective	
oddio	my goodness, good grief, good Heavens, my God	interjection	
bolletta	bill	noun	
giovedì	Thursday	noun	masculine
entro	within, by	preposition	
pagare	to pay	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Prendiamo il prossimo treno. "Let's get the next train."	La prossima volta guido io. "Next time, I'll drive."

Oddio! Cosa ti è successo? "My God! What happened to you?"	È arrivata la bolletta del gas. "The gas bill has arrived."
di giovedì on Thursday	Lunedì, martedì, mercoledì, giovedì e venerdì sono giorni settimanali. Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday are weekdays.
Domani è mercoledì, e dopodomani è giovedì. Tomorrow is Wednesday, and the day after tomorrow is Thursday.	Giovedì sarà il giorno più importante della mia vita. "This Thursday will be the most important day of my life."
Giovedì ho un appuntamento con Marta. "Thursday, I have a date with Marta."	Devo consegnare una tesina entro il fine-settimana, ma non so di cosa scrivere. "I have to submit an essay by the end of the week, but I don't know what to write about."
Devo essere alla riunione entro le sette. "I have to be at the meeting by seven."	Dobbiamo trovare una nuova casa entro domani. "We have to find a new house by tomorrow."
Quanto hai pagato quella borsa? "How much did you pay for that bag?"	Questa sera pago io. "This evening, I'll pay."

GRAMMAR

Direct Object Pronouns
Oddio, non le ho ancora pagate!
“My goodness, I still haven't paid them!”

We insert direct object pronouns right before the verb they are attached to in both simple and compound tenses.

For example:

Italian	***Italian Direct Object Pronoun***	**"English"**	**"English Direct Object Pronoun"**
Compro una macchina nuova di zecca.	*La compro.*	"I buy a brand-new car."	"I buy it."
Ho venduto la mia vecchia playstation.	*L'ho venduta.*	"I sold my old Playstation."	"I sold it."
Ieri ho visto Mary e Anne.	*Ieri le ho viste.*	"Yesterday, I saw Mary and Anne."	"Yesterday, I met them."

The third person singular direct object pronouns *lo* (him) and *la* (her) drop their ending vowel before the auxiliary *avere* (to have) in compound tenses and add the apostrophe. In contemporary Italian, the remaining direct object pronouns usually keep their ending vowels, though we may drop them to achieve stylistic poetical effects.

For instance:

Italian	***Italian Direct Object Pronoun***	**"English"**	**"English Direct Object Pronoun"**
Ho abbracciato mio fratello.	*L'ho abbracciato.*	"I hugged my brother."	"I hugged him."
Avrei aiutato Marta.	*L'avrei aiutata.*	"I would have helped Marta."	"I would have helped her."
Hanno osservato loro figlia a lungo.	*L'hanno osservata a lungo.*	"They looked at their daughter for a long time."	"They looked at her for a long time."
Serena ama me.	*Serena mi ama/m'ama.*	"Serena loves me."	"Serena loves me."
Marco ha invitato voi alla festa.	*Marco vi ha/v'ha invitato alla festa.*	"Marco invited you to the party."	"Marco invited you to the party."

As shown in the examples above, when using direct object pronouns in compound tenses, the past participle of the main verb agrees with the gender and number of the pronoun(s) we attached it to.

In negative statements, we position the particle *non* before direct object pronouns.

For example:

Negative Italian Statement	***Negative Italian Direct Object Pronoun Statement***	**"Negative English Statement"**	**"Negative English Direct Object Pronoun Statement"**
Non ho aperto la porta.	*Non l'ho aperta.*	"I didn't open the door."	"I didn't open it."
Non prendo la caramella.	*Non la prendo.*	"I don't take the candy."	"I don't take it."
Non scrivo la lettera.	*Non la scrivo.*	"I don't write the letter."	"I don't write it."

When unstressed direct object pronouns refer to a verb in its infinitive form, we directly attach them to it, obeying the following procedure:

1. Drop the ending vowel (*e*) of the infinitive
2. Add the unstressed object pronouns

For instance:

Italian	*Italian Direct Object Pronoun*	"English	"English Direct Object Pronoun"
È opportuno aspettare Carla.	*È opportuno aspettarla.*	"It's appropriate to wait for Carla."	"It's appropriate to wait for her."
È salutare mangiare frutta.	*È salutare mangiarla.*	"Eating fruit is healthy."	"Eating it is healthy."
Dobbiamo andare a trovare Antonio e Luigi.	*Dobbiamo andare a trovarli.*	"We need to go visit Antonio and Luigi."	"We need to go visit them."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Fountain of the Triton

The famous *fontana del Tritone* (fountain of the Triton) was commissioned by Pope Urban VIII to Gian Lorenzo Bernini. The Pope wished to decorate the square leading to his family house palace, *palazzo Barberini*. The statue depicts the episode of the song, *Triton in Front of the Palace of Sun*, as presented by the Roman poet Ovid. The sun, along with the roses, laurels, and bees, was one of the most representative symbols of the Barberini family.

At the center of the fountain's basin, four dolphins hold an open shell on their heads. The triton sits on it, blowing into a helix. A high-pitched noise rises up from it, caused by a high-pressured water jet. The tails of the four dolphins also hold two blazons bearing Pope Urban VIII's personal insignia.
Form an architectonical viewpoint, this fountain represents a small, but significant revolution of the theoretical standards of the Renaissance. In fact, they were inclined to separate plastic from fluid elements firmly, showing and marking the difference between marble and water. Bernini decided to break this unwritten rule, combining and balancing both elements into a coherent whole. The triton and the water jet seem to become a single visual element, merging with the water jet into a shining flow of matter.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #6

Can Italian Direct Object Pronouns Help You Relieve Stress?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Informal Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#6

DIALOGUE - INFORMAL ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Vai tu a pagare le bollette stamattina?
2. Martina : Sì, vado all'ufficio postale prima di andare in ufficio.
3. Laura : Ah dimenticavo. Dopo il lavoro incontro John. Vuoi venire con noi?
4. Martina : Per lui va bene se vengo?
5. Laura : Cosa vuoi dire?
6. Martina : Magari sono di troppo.

ENGLISH

1. Laura : Are you going to pay the bills this morning?
2. Martina : Yes, I'll go to the post office before going to the office.
3. Laura : Ah, I was forgetting. After work, I'm going to meet John. Want to come with us?
4. Martina : Is it okay with him if I come?
5. Laura : What do you mean?
6. Martina : Maybe I am in the way.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
magari	maybe	adverb	
mattina	morning	noun	feminine
ufficio	office	noun	masculine
ufficio postale	post office	phrase	masculine
essere di troppo	to be in the way	expression	
dimenticare	to forget, to leave behind	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Magari possiamo chiamare Anna.	domenica mattina
"Maybe we can call Anna."	Sunday morning

la mattina in the morning	Faccio jogging la mattina. I jog in the morning.
Si alza alle 8 ogni mattina. He gets up at 8 a.m. every morning.	la mattina presto early in the morning
fare la doccia alla mattina shower in the morning	Fanno una passeggiata ogni mattina. "They go for a walk every morning."
In questo periodo dell'anno fa ancora freddo di mattina. "At this time of the year it is still cold in the morning."	I nostri negozi riapriranno domani mattina. "Our stores will open again tomorrow morning."
Il lunedì mattina il medico non visita. "On Monday morning the doctor doesn’t examine."	Ogni mattina mi sveglio alle sette e dieci. "Every morning, I wake up at ten past seven."
lavorare in ufficio work at the office	ufficio dell'azienda company office
Le persone stanno lavorando in ufficio. The people are working at the office.	ufficio di lavoro work office
La gente sta lavorando in ufficio. The people are working at the office.	ufficio d'azienda company office
Il mio ufficio è al secondo piano. "My office is on the second floor."	Vado in ufficio ogni giorno alle 8 del mattino. "I go to the office everyday at 8:00 in the morning."
Potresti venire nel nostro ufficio per firmare il contratto? "Could you come to our office to sign the contract?"	Vivo vicino al mio ufficio "I live near my office. "
Questo ufficio è molto grande. "This office is very big."	A che piano è l'ufficio del Dott. Rossi? "On what floor is the office of Doctor Rossi?"
edificio dell'ufficio postale post office building	C'è un ufficio postale sulla Quinta Strada e uno sulla Central Street. There is a post office on 5th Avenue and one on Central Street.

L'ufficio postale è aperto fino alle 17:00. The post office is open until 5PM.	Ieri sono andata all'ufficio postale. "Yesterday I went to the post office."
L'ufficio postale chiude alle diciassette. "The post office closes at 5:00 PM."	Siamo di troppo, andiamo via. "We are in the way; let's go away."
Ho dimenticato la sciarpa sul treno. "I forgot the scarf on the train."	

GRAMMAR

Stressed Direct Object Pronouns
Per lui va bene se vengo?
"Is it okay with him if I come?"

In today's class, we will delve into the second category of Italian direct object pronouns, *pronomi personali tonici* (stressed direct object pronouns). We use these pronouns in the following two cases.

I. We use stressed direct object pronouns to emphasize the direct object above the remaining part of the sentence. We normally realize this effect in English by raising the pitch of the voice when pronouncing the pronoun. In this case, we position them right after the verb to which they refer.

For instance:

1. *Hanno scelto Mike come loro portavoce. - Hanno scelto lui come loro portavoce.*
   "They chose Mike as their spokesman." - "They chose him as their spokesman."
2. *Desiderano invitare me e te. - Desiderano invitare noi.*
   "They wish to invite me and you." - "They wish to invite us."
3. *Ho trovato solo Renato. - Ho trovato solo lui.*
   "I only found Renato." - "I only found him."

II. We also use stressed direct object pronouns after any preposition. Grammatically speaking, in this case the pronouns are not direct objects.

For example:

1. V*uoi uscire con Andrea? - Vuoi uscire con lui?*
   "Do you want to date Andrea?" - "Do you want to date him?"
2. *Per te e Arnaldo non è importante. - Per voi non è importante.*
   "It's not important to you and Arnaldo." - "It's not important to you."
3. *Hai veramente parlato con Sara? - Hai veramente parlato con lei?*
   "Did you really talk to Sara?" - "Did you really talk to her?"

The following scheme presents the Italian stressed personal pronouns, along with the corresponding direct object and their English translation.

Pronome personale soggetto	**"Subject Personal Pronoun"**	***Pronome diretto tonico***	**"Stressed Pronoun"**
Io	"I"	*me*	"me"
Tu	"you"	*te*	"you"
Lui	"he"	*lui*	"him"
Lei	"she"	*lei*	"her"
*Lui/Lei**	"it"	*lui/lei*	"it"
Noi	"we"	*noi*	"us"
Voi	"you"	*voi*	"you"
Loro	"they"	*loro*	"them"

***Note:** Refer to the explanation in the previous lesson regarding the gender of nouns in Italian.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Traianus

Traianus was the last great Roman General-emperor. He fought against the German tribes, defeated the Parthian empire, and conquered Armenia, Syria, and Mesopotamia. However, his greatest feat was the annexation of Dacia in a long and demanding campaign that lasted five years (101-106 A.C.). After having conquered the recalcitrant region, the Roman legions remained there for many years, exterminating those tribes who refused to abide by the Roman rule.
In order to leave an everlasting memory of the deeds he accomplished, he decided to erect a celebratory column, *la colonna di Traiano*, whose carvings would depict the most important events that occurred during his reign. Needless to say, the war against the Dacians occupies a large part of it. The celebratory purpose of the column combines a realistic account of facts. It depicts the Roman emperor as a great general, who personally leads his troops into battle and attends to ritual religious sacrifices. However, it represents the Dacians as a proud and honorable enemy, led by their great hero Decebalus. Differently from other celebratory monuments, the column of Traianus tells the story of two great leaders, whose destiny was decided by fate alone. The respect shown to the Dacians is proof of the just character of one the greatest Roman emperors. The column itself is almost forty meters tall.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #7

Indirect Object Pronouns: Can You Teach Me to Speak Italian?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

7

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Mi insegni a parlare nel tuo dialetto?
2. Laura : Vuoi davvero imparare il milanese?
3. John : Sì, deve essere interessante.
4. Laura : Hai chiesto a Martina? Il suo dialetto è molto colorito.
5. John : Mi ha detto che non ha tempo.
6. Laura : Allora ti insegno il milanese.

ENGLISH

1. John : Can you teach me to speak in your dialect?
2. Laura : You really want to learn Milanese?
3. John : Yes, it has to be interesting.
4. Laura : Have you asked Martina? Her dialect is very colorful.
5. John : She told me she doesn’t have time.
6. Laura : Then I’ll teach you Milanese.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
imparare	to learn	verb
suo	his, her, hers, its	possessive adjective, pronoun
colorito	colored, colorful, rosy	adjective
tuo	your, yours	possessive adjective, pronoun
parlare	to talk, to speak	verb
insegnare	to teach	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Giorno per giorno, Samuele impara cose nuove.	Cosa hai imparato oggi?
"Day by day Sam learns new things."	"What did you learn today?"

Suo padre si chiama Piero. "Her father's name is Piero."	Hai un trucco molto colorito. "You have a very colorful makeup."
E' quello il tuo cane? "Is that your dog?"	Cosa fa tuo padre? "What does your father do?"
Il merito è tuo. "The credit is yours."	Come sta tua nonna. "How is your grandma doing?"
Qual'è il tuo nome? "What is your name?"	Parliamone! "Let's talk about it!"
Ha parlato del suo nuovo progetto. "He talked about his new project."	Tu parli troppo, Marco. "You speak too much, Marco."
Non mi parli più? "You're not speaking to me anymore?"	Insegno italiano a studenti stranieri. "I teach Italian to foreign students."
Ti insegno qualche parola nuova. "I'll teach you some new words."	

GRAMMAR

Indirect Object Pronouns
Allora ti insegno il milanese.
"Then I'll teach you Milanese."

The *pronomi personali oggetto indiretto* substitute Italian nouns we normally introduce with the prepositions *per* (for, to) and *a* (to). In previous lessons, we saw that the *pronomi personali tonici* (stressed direct object pronouns) substitute nouns after any Italian preposition. The *pronomi personali oggetto indiretto* entirely substitute both the stressed direct object and its preceding preposition.

For instance:

1. **Noun:**
   Abbiamo insegnato a Mario e Luisa (indirect object nouns) *come usare internet.*
   "We taught Mario and Luisa how to use the Internet."
   Stressed Direct Object Pronouns:
   Abbiamo insegnato a lui e lei come usare internet.
   "We taught him and her how to use the Internet."
   Indirect Object Pronouns:
   Abbiamo insegnato loro come usare internet.
   "We taught them how to use the Internet."

This kind of pronoun answers the question "for whom/what" or "to whom/what?" Please, note that we usually attach the prepositions *per* and *a* to verbs that either do not require a direct object or need an indirect object in addition to it.

For example:

1. *Scrivo una lettera a Sara. -- Le scrivo una lettera.*
   "I write a letter to Sara." -- "I write her a letter."
2. *Ho regalato un nuovo computer a voi. -- Vi ho regalato un nuovo computer.*
   "I gave a new computer to you." -- "I gave you a new computer."
3. *Hai mandato il pacco a Luca? -- Gli hai mandato il pacco?*
   "Have you sent the package to Luca?" -- "Have you sent him the package?"

The following scheme presents the Italian stressed personal pronouns, along with the corresponding indirect object and their English translation.

Pronome personale soggetto	**"Subject Personal Pronoun"**	***Pronomi personali oggetto indiretto***	**"Indirect Object Pronouns"**
Io	"I"	*mi*	"(to) me"
Tu	"you"	*ti*	"(to) you"
Lui	"he"	*gli*	"(to) him"
Lei	"she"	*le*	"(to) her"
*Lui/Lei**	"it"	*gli/le*	"(to) it"
Noi	"we"	*ci***	"(to) us"
Voi	"you"	*vi*	"(to) you"
Loro	"they"	*loro (gli)*	"(to) them"

***Refers to the explanation in previous lessons regarding the gender of nouns in Italian.
****Do not mistake *ci* as a direct object pronoun, for *ci* as the adverb meaning, "there."

We realize the third person plural indirect object pronoun as *loro* in formal Italian and *gli* in informal Italian. Regarding written language, we should always use *loro*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Arch of Constantine

The largest Roman triumphal arch in existence, *l'arco di Costantino* (the Arch of Constantine) is located between the Colosseum and the Arch of Titus. The Arch of Constantine was built to celebrate the triumph of Constantine over the rival emperor Maxentius after the battle of Milvian Bridge.

The emperor Constantine is renowned for having officially stopped the persecutions against the Christians, thus establishing freedom of religion in the whole empire. He deeply reformed many aspects of Roman life. He introduced a new currency, and he reorganized the structure of command of his legions as well as the taxation system of Roman provinces.
However, even though he is sometimes presented as an enlightened and benevolent leader (especially by Christian historiography), his actions were far from spotless. He had both his wife and son killed due to succession rivalries. His attitude toward defeated enemies was one of a ruthless killer.

The emperor Constantine reigned during a difficult period of civil wars, uprisings, and secessionist movements. He managed to keep the empire together through both diplomatic skills and sheer violence.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #8

Indirect Object Pronouns: What Can You Tell Them in Italian?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#8

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Cosa gli hai detto?
2. John : Ho detto loro come raggiungere la stazione.
3. Laura : Di dove sono?
4. John : Sono canadesi.
5. Laura : Dove vanno?
6. John : Vanno a Roma.
7. Laura : Ascoltarti parlare in inglese è divertente!

ENGLISH

1. Laura : What did you tell them?
2. John : I told them how to reach the station.
3. Laura : Where are they from?
4. John : They are Canadians.
5. Laura : Where are they going to?
6. John : They are going to Rome.
7. Laura : Listening to you speak in English is fun!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
loro	they, them	object pronoun	
inglese	English	noun	masculine
stazione	station	noun	feminine
raggiungere	to reach, to achieve, to contact, to arrive, to join	verb	
canadese	Canadian	noun	masculine
divertente	funny, fun, amusing	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Chiedi loro cosa vogliono mangiare. "Ask them what they want to eat."	Sono loro! "It's them!"
Puoi tradurre per me dall'inglese al cinese? Can you translate from English to Chinese for me?	Il signor Suzuki insegna inglese. Mr. Suzuki teaches English.
Parli inglese? "Do you speak English?"	La stazione degli autobus è in Piazza Colombo. "The bus station is in Colombo Square."
La squadra ha raggiunto la finale di pallavolo. "The team has reached the volleyball final."	Gli altri ci raggiungono dopo cena. "The others are joining us after dinner."
La squadra ha raggiunto la finale di pallavolo. "The team has reached the volleyball final."	Lui è canadese. "He is Canadian."
Penso che il film fosse veramente divertente. "I think that the movie was really fun."	Gli spettacoli di Crozza sono sempre divertenti. "Crozza's shows are always entertaining."
Il film che abbiamo visto ieri sera è stato davvero divertente. "The movie we saw last night was really funny."	È divertente giocare a calcio. "It's fun to play soccer."

GRAMMAR

Indirect Object Pronouns
Cosa gli hai detto?
"What did you tell them?"

The syntax of Italian Indirect object pronouns works as follows:

First: Except in the case of *loro*, we position them before the verb in both simple and compound tenses. Note that, unlike direct object pronouns, in compound tenses the past participle of the main verb never agrees with the gender and number of indirect object pronouns.

Second: When referring to infinitives, gerunds, and imperatives, we attach the pronouns directly to them, obeying the following procedure:

1. Drop the ending vowel (*e*) of the infinitive
2. Add the unstressed object pronouns

For instance:

1. **Noun:**
   Telefonando a Elena hai fatto la cosa giusta.

"By calling Elena, you did the right thing."
Indirect Object Pronoun:
Telefonandole hai fatto la cosa giusta.
"By calling her, you did the right thing."

Third: When used with the modal verbs *dovere* (must, to have to), *potere* (can, may), and *volere* (to want), we can either attach the indirect object pronouns to the following infinitive or they may precede the modal verb. This rule applies to both simple and compound tenses.

For instance:

1. **Noun:**
   Ho voluto consegnare a Federico l'assegno.
   "I wanted to deliver the check to Federico."
   Indirect Object Pronoun:
   Ho voluto consegnargli l'assegno.
   "I wanted to deliver the check to him."
   OR
   Gli ho voluto consegnare l'assegno.
   "I wanted to deliver him the check."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Fountain of Turtles

The *fontana delle tartarughe* (Fountain of Turtles) lies in the beautiful *piazzetta Mattei* (Mattei Square). Its unforgettable sight suddenly comes into view when approaching the square from one of the many romantic alleys that surrounds it. This is doubtlessly one of the most gracious Florentine-style fountains in Rome.

Giacomo dalla Porta designed the fountain itself, whereas the Tuscan artist Taddeo Landini created the four bronze statues. Four well-shaped *ephebi* push the turtles up, as if to make them drink pure water that sprays from the water jet above. It seemed that in the first project, the ephebi should have held four dolphins instead of turtles, but at the end, the artist resorted to using a less obvious symbol of water. Since the dolphins had already been sculpted, they were put into the first version of the *fontana della Terrina* (fountain of Terrina) in *Campo de' Fiori*.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #9

Combine Tenses: I Was Shopping in Milan When You Called!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#9

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Ieri ha nevicato!
2. John : Sì, ho visto.
3. Laura : Mentre andavo in ufficio ho scattato delle foto ai tetti.
4. John : Perché ai tetti?
5. Laura : Sono belli quando sono coperti di neve.

ENGLISH

1. Laura : Yesterday, it snowed!
2. John : Yes, I saw.
3. Laura : While I was going to the office, I took some pictures of rooftops.
4. John : Why rooftops?
5. Laura : They are pretty when they are covered in snow.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
foto	photo, picture	noun	feminine
coprire	to cover, screen, blanket	verb	
nevicare	to snow	verb	
tetto	roof, rooftop	noun	
scattare una foto	to take a picture	phrase	
neve	snow	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Questa è una foto della nuova fotocopiatrice. "Here's a photo of the new photocopier."	È una bella foto. "It's a beautiful picture."
Posso scattare una foto? "Can I take a picture?"	Vendete un'assicurazione che copra tutti i danni? "Do you sell insurance that covers all the damages?"

Fa freddo, copriti! "It's cold; cover yourself!"	Domani dovrebbe nevicare. "It should snow tomorrow."
C'è un gatto sul tetto. "There's a cat on the roof."	Mi può scattare una foto. "Can you take a picture?"
La neve sta cadendo durante la notte. Snow is falling at night.	neve cadente falling snow
volpe nella neve fox in the snow	La neve ha coperto tutto. The snow has covered everything.
La neve sta cadendo nel bosco. The snow is falling in the woods.	neve sul terreno snow on the ground
In Italia non ho mai visto la neve. "In Italy I have never seen snow."	Giochiamo nella neve? "Let's play in the snow."

GRAMMAR

Combining Passato Prossimo and Imperfetto Tenses
Mentre andavo in ufficio ho scattato delle foto ai tetti.
"While I was going to the office, I took some pictures of rooftops."

The tense agreement between *passato prossimo* and *imperfetto* tense is essential to comprehend how to convey past occurrences in formal narrations. We have already introduced the main features of both tenses in previous classes. In today's class, we will see how to combine them correctly.

We use the *passato prossimo* tense to express definite actions, which we can insert into a precise, definite temporal context.

We use the *imperfetto* tense to describe any element of the narration that provides additional information to the main actions.

Within the aforementioned limits, their employment depends on the will of the speaker to stress particular actions over the rest of the sentence. The speaker can freely interchange them in certain circumstances.

For instance:

1. *Ieri nevicava.* (*imperfetto*)
   "Yesterday, it snowed."
2. *Ieri ha nevicato.* (*passato prossimo*)
   "Yesterday, it snowed."

Grammatically speaking, both sentences are correct. However, in the first sentence the speaker casually illustrates an event that occurred, whereas in the second he/she wishes to point out that it did snow yesterday.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Last Great Emperor of the Roman Empire: Marcus Aurelius

Many historians consider the emperor philosopher, Marcus Aurelius, to be the last great emperor of the Roman Empire. Marcus Aurelius was a highly educated person, aware of his duty towards the state. He always sought to unite the many different political senatorial parties because he believed, "the universe is like a city; we were born to help each other, similar to feet, hands, and eyelids."

Despite his high morality and beliefs, he had to face one of the worst barbaric invasions that threatened to destroy the empire. He personally led the Roman legions against the invaders, pushing them back many times and fighting unceasingly for over twenty-five years.
The *Colonna di Marco Aurelio* (Column of Marcus Aurelius) was erected after his death and depicts only the most important episodes (mostly victories against the Marcomanni and Sarmatians tribes) of his life. The carvings do not follow a strict chronological order and represent the emperor as a divinity. This aspect differs greatly from the column of Traianus, where the great emperor is depicted as a courageous, as well as merciful and sympathetic, leader.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #10

While I was Shopping in Milan, I Lost my Credit Cards!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#10

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Ieri sera nevicava molto forte e mentre tornavo a casa sono scivolato!
2. Laura : Ti sei fatto male?
3. John : No, ma ero molto imbarazzato.
4. Laura : Perché?
5. John : Dei bambini mi guardavano e ridevano.

ENGLISH

1. John : Yesterday evening it was snowing very heavily and while I was going back home I slipped!
2. Laura : Did you hurt yourself?
3. John : No, but I was very embarrassed.
4. Laura : Why?
5. John : Some children were looking at me and laughing.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
farsi male	to hurt oneself	verbal expression
scivolare	to slide, slip, glide	verb
imbarazzare	to embarrass	verb
forte	strong, powerful, loud, tough, heavy, severe	adjective
tornare	to go back, to come back, to get back	verb
mentre	while, whilst	conjunction

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Mi sono fatto male correndo. "I hurt myself while running."	Mario è scivolato mentre correva. "Mario slipped while he was running."
La ragazza era imbarazzata. "The girl was embarrassed."	Wow, è proprio forte! Wow, that's super cool!

Jack è un uomo forte e gioca in una squadra di rugby. "Jack is a strong man and he plays in a rugby team."	Tuo padre è molto forte. "Your father is very strong."
Luca torna da scuola verso l'una. "Luke comes back from school about one p.m."	Ieri sono tornato a casa tardi. "Yesterday I got back home late."
Vorrei tornare a S. Gimignano. "I would like to go back to S. Gimignano."	Guarda avanti mentre cammini. "Look in front of you while you're walking."
Mentre tornavo ho incontrato Matteo. "I met Matteo while I was going back."	Ascolto musica mentre viaggio in treno. "I listen to music while I travel by train."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Combining the Italian *passato prossimo* and *imperfetto* Tenses
Ieri sera nevicava molto forte e mentre tornavo a casa sono scivolato!
"Yesterday evening it was snowing very heavily and while I was going back home I slipped!"

In order to better illustrate the *passato prossimo* and *imperfetto* tense agreement, consider the following short story.

Ieri stava piovendo. Mentre guardavo la televisione è suonato il telefono. Stavo andando a rispondere e sono caduto a terra. Stavo per rialzarmi quando il telefono ha smesso di suonare. La stanza era fredda e scura. Io ero un po' nervoso a causa del tempo. Quando ero giovane guardavo la pioggia, mi faceva pensare al futuro come infinite gocce di possibilità. Ora pensavo alla mia famiglia e sorridevo.

"Yesterday, it was raining. While I was watching the TV, the phone rang. I was going to answer (the call), and I fell on the floor. I was about to stand up when the phone stopped ringing. The room was cold and dark. I was a bit nervous due to the weather. When I was young, I used to look at rain. It made me think about the future as infinite drops of possibilities. Now, I thought about my family and smiled."

The *Imperfetto* Tense

The short story above presents the main contexts in which to use the *imperfetto* tense.

I. We use the *imperfetto* tense to describe the traits of the environment, situations, or animate and inanimate beings in a narration.

For example:

1. *Ieri stava piovendo.*
   "Yesterday, it was raining."

2. *La stanza era fredda e scura.*
   "The room was dark and cold."

II. We can use the *imperfetto* to express past, ongoing actions before they were interrupted. The conjunction *mentre* ("while") often precedes these actions and we can also conjugate them in the *passato progressivo* (past progressive) tense.

For instance:

1. *Mentre guardavo* (*imperfetto*) *la televisione...*
   "While I was watching the TV..."
   OR
2. *Mentre stavo guardando* (*passato progressivo*) la televisione...
   "While I was watching the TV..."

III. Another use of the *imperfetto* tense is to describe the character of individuals in the past.

For example:

1. *Io ero un po' nervoso a causa del tempo.*
   "I was a bit nervous due to the weather."

IV. We can use the *imperfetto* tense to describe repetitions, recurrent actions, and past habits.

For example:

1. *Quando ero giovane mi piaceva guardare* (past habit and repetition) *la pioggia.*
   "When I was young, I liked looking at the rain."
2. ...*mi faceva pensare* (recurrent action) al futuro come...
   "...it made me think about the future as..."

V. One more way we will discuss in which we can use the *imperfetto* tense is to express two or more contemporary actions in the past.

1. *Ora pensavo alla mia famiglia e sorridevo.*
   "Now, I thought about my family and smiled."

The Passato Prossimo Tense

We employ the *passato prossimo* tense to express the main actions of the narration, which take place at a particular time.

For example:

1. ...*è suonato il telefono.*
   "...the phone rang."
2. ...sono caduto a terra.
   "...I fell on the floor."
3. ...il telefono ha smesso di suonare.
   "...the phone stopped ringing."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Parco del Pincio

The *parco del Pincio* (Pincio park) was the first walkway created in Rome. It was specifically aimed to provide its inhabitants with a green public area. It was built between 1810 and 1818 on the *Pincio* hill, an area that splendid villas belonging to the finest Roman aristocracy occupied during the Roman rule. The Roman architect and archeologist Giuseppe Valadier (1762-1839) designed the park.

After having passed by the *Casina Valdier* (which nowadays hosts a famous restaurant), we see a large square, *piazzale Napoleone* I, that leads to the *terrazza del Pincio* (Pincio terrace). From there, people can enjoy one of the most beautiful views of Rome, especially during nighttime. Quite curiously, the park hosts over two hundred marble busts of eminent Italians of the past. The Italian state originally commissioned these sculptures to help Roman artists find a job after the 1848 revolution. However, the undertaking also served a less altruistic purpose. Creating a public space to show the protagonists of the recently founded Italian state would help giving it intellectual credibility, as well as giving Italians some heroic lives to imitate and admire.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #11

What a Difference One Letter Makes – Italian Simple Prepositions

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#11

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Che cosa vuoi fare questa sera?
2. John : Possiamo andare al cinema.
3. Laura : Ci sto! Ma non voglio fare troppo tardi.
4. John : L'ultimo spettacolo finisce alle ventitré e quarantacinque. Va bene?
5. Laura : È un po' tardi. A che ora finisce quello prima?
6. John : Finisce alle ventidue e trenta.
7. Laura : OK! Non vedo l'ora!

ENGLISH

1. Laura : What do you want to do tonight?
2. John : We can go to the movies.
3. Laura : I'm in! But I don't want to be too late.
4. John : The last show ends at eleven forty-five. Is that okay?
5. Laura : It's a little late. At what time does the previous one end?
6. John : It ends at ten thirty.
7. Laura : Okay! I can't wait!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
troppo	too much	adverb and adjective
finire	to finish, to end, to stop	verb
tardi	late	adverb
cinema	cinema, movie theater	noun
spettacolo	show, performance, sight	noun
ultimo	last, latest, farthest, final	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Vorrei una birra ma non troppo fredda. "I'd like a beer but not too cold."	Non dovresti bere troppo vino. "You shouldn't drink too much wine."
Ho bevuto troppo. "I drank too much."	Fammi sapere quando hai finito il lavoro, per favore. "Please let me know when you have finished the task."
Hai finito i compiti? "Did you finish your homework?"	Non finisci mai di sorprendermi! "You never cease to amaze me!"
Finisco subito. "I will finish right away."	Svegliati perchè è tardi! Wake up because it's late!
Torno a casa tardi stasera. Tonight I'll be back (home) late.	in ritardo di un'ora an hour late
in ritardo per una riunione late for a meeting	Il cliente è in ritardo per la riunione. The client is late for the meeting.
È tardi, vero? "It's late, right?"	Era troppo tardi per cambiare le mie brutte abitudini. "It was too late for me to change my bad habits."
Arrivi sempre tardi in ufficio. "You always arrive late at the office."	Ieri notte sono tornato tardi. "Last night I came back late."
Scusa, ho fatto tardi. "Sorry, I'm late."	Mia cugina va al cinema ogni fine settimana. "My cousin goes to the cinema every weekend."
Domenica vado al cinema. "I am going to the movie theater on Sunday."	Lo spettacolo di ieri sera è stato molto bello. "Yesterday's show was very nice."
Goditi lo spettacolo! "Enjoy the show!"	Gli ultimi saranno i primi. "The last ones will be the first ones."
Questa è l'ultima volta. "This is the last time."	L'ultimo treno per Ravenna è alle venti e quaranta. "The last train for Ravenna is at eight forty."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Italian Prepositions
L'ultimo spettacolo finisce alle ventitré e quarantacinque.
"The last show ends at eleven forty-five."

Although the translation of prepositions might seem simple at a first glance, we cannot translated them as independent elements. Italian prepositions depend on both the verb we use them with and the meaning of the following object.

Italian prepositions comprise four main categories.

First- *preposizioni semplici* ("simple prepositions")

Second- *preposizioni articolate* ("compound prepositions")

Third- *preposizioni improprie* ("improper prepositions")

Fourth- *locuzioni preposizionali* ("prepositional phrases")

Today we will start work on the *preposizioni semplici* ("simple prepositions").

Observe the following:

di; *a*; *da*; *in*; *con*; *su*; *per*; *tra*; *fra*

Use the simple preposition, *a,* in the following cases.

I. Before indirect objects - In this case, it translates as "to."

For example:

Italian	**"English"**
Ho dato lo zaino a Luca.	"I gave the schoolbag to Luca."
Avete prestato a Maria la vostra macchina?	"Did you lend your car to Maria?"
Abbiamo scritto a John.	"We wrote to John."

II. When expressing time, place the preposition before the hours. In this case, it combines with the plural feminine definite article *le*, becoming the compound preposition *alle*. Don't create the compound preposition when you are referring to *mezzogiorno* ("noon"), *mezzanotte* ("midnight") and *una* ("one"). When referring to time, *a* translates as "at."

For example:

Italian	"English"
Ci vediamo alle cinque e mezza.	"I'll see you at 5:30 PM."
Lo spettacolo termina a mezzanotte/mezzogiorno.	"The show ends at midnight/noon."
Loro di solito pranzano all'una in punto.	"They usually have lunch at one o'clock."

III. Before *complementi di luogo* (places or locations to which the action is directed). In this case, the preposition *a* translates differently according to the verb we use it with.

For example:

Italian	"English"
Andiamo a casa.	"We go home."
Il treno è arrivato a New York.	"The train arrived in New York."
Devi andare dritto e poi girare a destra.	"You have to go straight ahead and then turn right."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Columns of San Lorenzo (*Le colonne di San Lorenzo*)

The *colonne di San Lorenzo* ("Columns of San Lorenzo") represent one of the few remaining Roman structures in Milan, along with the amphitheater ruins and the herculean thermal baths of the circus.

They consist of sixteen marble columns adorned with Corinthian capitals, which used to hold the roof of an ancient Roman building, probably the large thermal baths built by the will of the emperor Maximianus. The columns have a particular significance to the inhabitants of Milan, since they are evidence of the ancient *Mediolanum*, a city that resisted for at least two millennia against terrible events such as invasions, world wars, and the often inattentive city planning of the inhabitants.

The *colonne di San Lorenzo* are a particularly popular meeting place among the young people of the city. Nowadays, the Columns of San Lorenzo are partially closed, a decision taken by the city authorities in order to protect them from possible mishaps. Despite this decision, the neighborhood remains one of the most fashionable meeting places for Milan nightlife.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #12

Travel in Italy Could Be Hard Without This...Unless You Come by Horse!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#12

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Andiamo in macchina?
2. Laura : No a piedi! Certo che andiamo in macchina!
3. John : Ah. Pensavo di andare a cavallo.
4. Laura : Sei proprio simpatico.
5. John : Altrimenti potremmo andare in Vespa.
6. Laura : Preferisco la macchina.

ENGLISH

1. John : Shall we go by car?
2. Laura : No, on foot! Of course, we're going by car!
3. John : Ah. I thought we could go on horseback.
4. Laura : You're really funny.
5. John : Otherwise we could go by Vespa.
6. Laura : I prefer the car.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
proprio	really, actually	adverb
altrimenti	otherwise	adverb
a piedi	on foot, by foot	adverb
a cavallo	on horseback, by horse	adverb
simpatico	nice, funny, likeable	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Sei proprio sicuro?	Non ti capisco proprio.
"Are you really sure?"	"I really don't understand you."

Oggi sono proprio contenta. "Today, I'm really happy."	Altrimenti, potrebbe essere meglio non incoraggiarlo troppo. "Otherwise, it might be better not to encourage him too much."
Mi piace tenermi occupato altrimenti mi annoio. "I like to get busy; otherwise, I get bored."	Ricordami dell'appuntamento, altrimenti mi dimentico. "Remind me about the appointment; otherwise, I'll forget."
Devo andare, altrimenti arriverò tardi al lavoro. "I have to go; otherwise, I'll be late for work."	Mercoledì vado in ufficio a piedi. "Wednesday, I am going to the office by foot."
Non sono mai andato a cavallo. "I've never been horseback riding."	Il tuo amico è molto simpatico. "Your friend is very nice."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Italian Prepositions
Andiamo in macchina?
"Shall we go by car?"

Today we are going to continue with the study of the *preposizioni semplici,* or "simple prepositions."

Observe the following:

di; *a*; *da*; *in*; *con*; *su*; *per*; *tra*; *fra*

Use the preposition *in,* in the following circumstances.

I. Before any means of transportation, except for *a cavallo* ("on horseback") and *a piedi* ("on foot").

For example:

1. *Loro sono andati a Chicago in macchina.*
   "They went to Chicago by car."
2. *Il centro città dista trenta minuti in autobus.*
   "The city center is thirty minutes away by bus."
3. *L'anfiteatro può essere raggiunto solo a piedi.*
   "The amphitheater can be reached only on foot."

II. Before *complementi di luogo,* places or locations to which the action is directed. Similar to the preposition *a*, the preposition *in,* translates differently according to the verb with which you use it.

For instance:

1. *Sono in banca*
   "I'm at the bank."
2. *Andate in Sicilia per le vacanze?*
   "Are you going to Sicily for your vacation?"
3. *Milano si trova in Lombardia.*
   "Milan is in Lombardy." (Lombardy is a region of Italy.)

For *complementi di luogo,* choosing between *a* and *in* might seem difficult at first. Admittedly, mistaking one these prepositions for the other does not normally affect the overall result of the conversation (i.e., it's a minor mistake.) The following guidelines show you the category of noun related to specific prepositions.

We use the preposition *a* before cities, specific places, or generic places modified by adjectives.

For example:

1. *Marta e Luisa vivono a Roma.*
   "Marta and Luisa live in Rome."
2. *Siamo andati al* (*a+il*) Colosseo.
   "We went to the Colosseum."
3. *Eliana studia alla* (*a+la*) biblioteca vicina l'Università.
   "Eliana studies at the library close to the University."

We use the preposition *in* before regions, countries, continents, and generic places (unmodified by adjectives).

For instance:

1. *Pompei si trova in Campania.*
   "Pompei is in Camapania."
2. *Francesco vive in Asia da dieci anni.*
   "Francesco has been living in Asia for ten years."
3. *Gianluca si trasferirà in Australia.*
   "Gianluca will be moving to Australia."
4. *Mio padre è in ospedale.*
   "My father is at the hospital."

Please, note that the guidelines above are general. The best way to learn how to choose between *in* and *a* is to learn them as part of the verb with which you use them.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Roman Amphitheater of Milan (*Teatro romano di Milano*)

The *teatro romano di Milano* ("Roman amphitheater of Milan") was built close to *Porta Ticinese,* Ticinese Gate, during the second and third century A.D. The city of Milan (in Latin, *Mediolanum*), was an important political and business center within the Roman Empire. The social and political decline of Milan started around the fifth century, contemporaneous with the fall of the Western Roman Empire.

The amphitheater was abandoned due to religious and practical reasons; the recently established Christian religion considered human fights between gladiators an unnecessary violence that disregarded the principle of preserving human life, which it wanted to protect. In addition, getting wild animals for the *venations* ("animal hunting contest"), had, by that time, become particularly difficult.

A barbaric invasion destroyed the amphitheater. Scholars haven't been able to identify precisely which one, though it seems likely the arena was razed sometime around the fifth or sixth century. A nearby museum, *Antiquarium Alda Levi*, holds artifacts from excavations of the amphitheater's ruins.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #13

Everyone's Talking About This in Italian... Can You?!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#13

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Io voglio vedere un film d'azione.
2. Laura : D'azione? No, io voglio vedere un film d'amore.
3. John : I film d'amore sono così noiosi!
4. Laura : Cosa ne dici dell'ultimo film di Clint Eastwood?
5. John : Vuoi dire il film intitolato "Gran Torino"?
6. Laura : Sì quello.
7. John : Okay, va bene.

ENGLISH

1. John : I want to see an action movie.
2. Laura : Action? No. I want to see a romance movie.
3. John : Romance movies are so boring!
4. Laura : What about Clint Eastwood's latest movie?
5. John : You mean the movie entitled "Gran Torino?"
6. Laura : Yes, that one.
7. John : Okay, it's fine.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class
di	of, some, by, from, about	preposition
quello	that	adjective
amore	love	noun
azione	action	noun
noioso	boring, tiresome, dull	adjective
intitolare	entitle, title, dedicate	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

La penna è di Luca. "It's Luca's pen."	Di dove sei? "Where are you from?"
Andiamo a vedere quello spettacolo? "Shall we go see that show?"	Quello costa un euro. "That costs one euro."
Ho trovato l'amore. "I've found love."	L'amore è cieco. "Love is blind."
Mio cugino guarda solo film d'azione. "My cousin watches only action movies."	Questo talk show è troppo noioso! "This talk show is too boring!"
Questo programma televisivo è noioso. "This TV program is boring."	Il libro è intitolato "Come imparare l'Italiano in una settimana". "The book is entitled 'How to Learn Italian in One Week'."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Italian Prepositions
Cosa ne dici dell'ultimo film di Clint Eastwood?
"What about Clint Eastwood's latest movie?"

Today we are going to continue with the study of the *preposizioni semplici,* simple prepositions.

Observe the following:

di; *a*; *da*; *in*; *con*; *su*; *per*; *tra*; *fra*

Because there are quite a few ways to use the preposition *di,* we shall divide this topic into two lessons.

We use the preposition *di* in three ways.

I. To express topics of conversations or writings.

For example:

1. *Ad Anna piace sempre parlare di moda.*
   "Anna always likes talking about fashion."
2. *Questo libro tratta di chimica.*
   "This book deals with Chemistry."
3. *Abbiamo discusso di politica per alcune ore.*
   "We talked about politics for a couple of hours."

II. To express one's birthplace.

For instance:

1. *Marco è di Venezia.*
   "Marco is from Venice."
2. *Paola è di Verona.*
   "Paola is from Verona."
3. *Mario e Lucia sono di Napoli.*
   "Mario and Lucia are from Naples."

III. To express possession or ownership of something when using nouns. Note that this rule does not apply to pronouns.

For instance:

1. *Questa casa è di mia sorella.*
   "This is my sister's house."
2. *La penna è di Federico.*
   "This is Federico's pen."
3. *L'orologio è di Dario.*
   "The is Dario's watch."
   but
4. *Quella macchina è mia.*
   "That car is mine."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Lido of Milan (*Il Lido di Milano*)

The Lido of Milan is a large area located in the western part of the city, precisely in front of Piazzale Lotto. The Lido is devoted to recreational activities, especially sports. The project started around the middle twenties, when the city inhabitants felt the need to have an extensive area dedicated exclusively to sport and leisure activities, a sort of *città dello sport* ("sports city") with suitable facilities. The "city within the city" was built near the San Siro hippodrome.

The engineer, Cesare Marescotti, planned the Lido on behalf of the *Società anonima del Luna Park Lido di Milano,* Milan anonymous society of Lido amusement park. He planned many irregular-shaped swimming pools, fairs, and other entertainment facilities.

The Lido was inaugurated on 5 July 1931. However, its multi-functional purpose was initially not very appreciated. The city of Milan then decided to purchase the Lido from the private company, and the city started a renovation aimed to make it a pure sporting center. That idea proved to be successful and by the middle of the thirties, the residents made the Lido one of the most popular places in Milan.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #14

Italian Simple Prepositions: Will Hitting You With the Phone Help You?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#14

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : È incredibile il traffico di stasera!
2. Laura : Veramente! Siamo partiti da un'ora da casa mia.
3. John : Ma siamo ancora molto lontani dal cinema.
4. Laura : Speriamo di farcela, altrimenti dove andiamo?
5. John : Al massimo andiamo da Martina, cosa ne dici?
6. Laura : Sì, per me va bene.
7. John : OK, va bene dai, dalle un colpo di telefono.

ENGLISH

1. John : Tonight's traffic is incredible!
2. Laura : Really! We left my place an hour ago.
3. John : But we're still far from the cinema.
4. Laura : I hope we can make it, otherwise where should we go?
5. John : At most, we could go to Martina's place, what do you think?
6. Laura : Yes, that's okay for me.
7. John : Okay, fine, please give her a ring then.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
vedere	to look, to watch, to see	verb	
altrimenti	otherwise	adverb	
traffico	traffic	noun	masculine
lontano	far, distant	adjective	
simile	similar, alike	adjective	
colpo	blow, shot, knock, hit	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Oh, vedo mia madre. "Oh, I'm seeing my mother."	Andiamo a vedere una gara di sci. "Let's go watch a ski competition."
Hai visto quel film? "Have you seen that movie?"	Hai visto il mio cellulare? "Have you seen my cell phone?"
Altrimenti, potrebbe essere meglio non incoraggiarlo troppo. "Otherwise, it might be better not to encourage him too much."	Mi piace tenermi occupato altrimenti mi annoio. "I like to get busy; otherwise, I get bored."
Ricordami dell'appuntamento, altrimenti mi dimentico. "Remind me about the appointment; otherwise, I'll forget."	Devo andare, altrimenti arriverò tardi al lavoro. "I have to go; otherwise, I'll be late for work."
Oggi c'è molto traffico sull'autostrada. "Today, there's a lot of traffic on the highway."	C'è sempre traffico in centro. "There is always traffic downtown."
Voglio andare lontano da qui. "I want to go far from here."	Sono lontano da casa. "I'm far from home."
Paolo e Andrea sono sempre insieme: hanno un carattere molto simile. "Paolo and Andrea are always together: they have a similar personality."	Le grandi menti pensano in modo simile. "Great minds think alike."
Il colpo lo ha buttato a terra. "The blow knocked him down."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Italian Preposition *da*.
Ma siamo ancora molto lontani dal cinema.
"But we're still far from the cinema."

We use the simple preposition *da* as follows:

1) When associated with verbs related to movement, to express provenance. For example:

Italian	"English Translation"
Siamo partiti da Milano ieri sera.	"We left from Milan yesterday evening."
Lucia è tornata da Roma.	"Lucia came back from Rome."
Sono uscito dal negozio cinque minuti fa.	"I got out from the store five minutes ago."

2) To express the amount of time that has passed since the beginning of an action. Please note that in this case, in English, we would employ the progressive tenses ending in "-ing."

For instance:

Italian	"English Translation"
Studio chitarra da sei anni.	"I've been studying guitar for six years."
Vivo a Milano da due mesi.	"I've been living in Milan for two months."
Stai parlando da due ore!	"You've been talking for two hours."

3) In passive sentences, we use *da* to express the agent, that is the person/object the action is performed by.

For example:

Italian	"English Translation"
Questo tavolo è stato realizzato da mio padre.	(literally) "This table was realized by my father."
Lo studio è fatto da famosi economisti.	(literally) "The survey is done by eminent economists."
La macchina fotografica è stata presa da Piero.	(literally) "The camera was taken by Piero."

4) When preceding proper names or pronouns, *da* indicates the place, the location where the action is performed, and to which the following noun/pronoun refers.

For example:

Italian	"English Translation"
Ci vediamo da me alle sei?	"Shall we meet at my place at six?"
Sono andato da Mario per studiare assieme.	"I went to Mario's place to study together."
Ho dimenticato le chiavi da te.	"I forgot the keys at your place."

5) In certain comparisons and similarities, *da* expresses the likeness or kindred nature of the term of comparison. Note that these expressions don't always translate literally in English.

For example:

Italian	"English Translation"
Non è da te avere così paura.	"It doesn't suit you to be so fearful."
Questo mouse funziona anche da chiavetta usb.	"This mouse also works as a flash drive."
I tuoi compagni non hanno reagito da veri amici.	"Your fellows didn't act like true friends."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Who is ready to speak against someone else must be faultless.

Carere debet omni vitio qui in alterum dicere paratus est
Deve essere privo di ogni colpa chi è pronto a parlare contro un altro.
"Who is ready to speak against someone else must be faultless."

Scior Carera ("Mr. Carera") is the folk nickname the inhabitants of Milan have given to an ancient Roman sculpture. The statue is alternatively called *Omm de preja* (*uomo di pietra*, "stone man"), even though it's made of marble. It depicts a male character dressed in a rich Roman toga, without arms and with a knee slightly raised toward the direction of viewers. The head was probably added during the middle ages, following a restorative philosophy based on integrating missing parts through the individual interpretation of the artist's style. Until recent times, political dissidents used the statue to leave anonymous messages and satiric poems against the dominant power, thus following a long-established Italian tradition of using a particular statue to become the voice of people: the uncontrollable, spontaneous democratic seed present in any political entity. Its importance in performing this role is equal to that of the so-called *Pasquino* in Rome.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #15

This Simple Italian Word Can Really Take You Places!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#15

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Laura, ti ricordi il numero di Martina?
2. Laura : Sì, dovrei averlo sulla rubrica del telefonino. A proposito, hai visto il mio cellulare?
3. John : Sì, è lì sul cruscotto della macchina.
4. Laura : Ah già, grazie.
5. John : Con questo traffico ci metteremo molto tempo per arrivare da Martina.
6. Laura : Su col morale dai, andremo al cinema insieme un'altra volta!
7. John : Va bene, va bene.

ENGLISH

1. John : Laura, do you remember Martina's number?
2. Laura : Yes, I should have it in my mobile's address book. By the way, did you see my cell phone?
3. John : Yeah, it's on the car's dashboard.
4. Laura : Oh, right! Thank you.
5. John : With this traffic, it'll take us a lot of time to go to Martina's place.
6. Laura : Come on, keep your spirits up, we'll go to movies together soon!
7. John : All right, all right.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
ricordare	to remember, to not forget, to recall	verb	
telefono	telephone	noun	masculine
numero	number	noun	masculine
rubrica	address book	noun	
cruscotto	dashboard, instrument panel	noun	
morale	moral, spirits, mood	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Hai pensato che non mi sarei ricordata del tuo compleanno. "You thought I wouldn't remember your birthday."	Non mi ricordo cosa ho mangiato ieri. "I don't remember what I ate yesterday."
Ricordati di fare i compiti. "Don't forget to do your homework."	Il telefono blu è sul tavolo. The blue telephone is on the table.
telefono e fax telephone and fax	telefono cordless cordless telephone
Il telefono sta squillando. "The telephone is ringing."	Il telefono non funziona. "The telephone isn't working."
I numeri 11 e 17 sono entrambi numeri primi. The numbers 11 and 17 are both prime numbers.	Il tredici è un numero primo. "Thirteen is a prime number."
Qual è il numero di targa della tua macchina? "What's the number plate of your car?"	Passami la rubrica. "Hand me the address book."
Il cruscotto della macchina è nero. "The car's dashboard is black."	Ieri ero giù di morale. "Yesterday, I was low in spirits."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Italian Preposition *su*.
Su col morale dai, andremo al cinema insieme un'altra volta!
"Come on, keep your spirits up, we'll go to movies together soon!"

You should use the preposition *su* as follows:

1) To indicate the topic of a sentence. Note that in this case, the preposition almost always combines with the definite article preceding the noun.

For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Ho scritto diversi articoli sulla (i.e., *su* + *la*) *politica internazionale.*	"I wrote a good deal of articles about international politics."
Hanno letto un libro sulla (i.e., *su* + *la*) *vita di JFK.*	"They read a book on JFK's life."
La riunione verterà sui (i.e., *su* + *i*) *nuovi progetti.*	"The meeting will be focused on new projects."

2) To express the position of objects placed on something. Similar to the first case, *su* attaches to the definite article preceding the following nouns.

For instance:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
La penna è sul (i.e., *su* + *il*) *tavolo.*	"The pen is on the table."
La maglia è sulla (i.e., *su* + *la*) *lavatrice.*	"The sweater is on the washing machine."
Il cellulare è sul (i.e., *su* + *il*) *libro.*	"The cellular phone is on the book."

Please note that in this situation, you may substitute the *preposizione semplice su* with the equivalent preposition *sopra* + the definite article (preceding the noun).

For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
I piatti sono sopra il tavolo.	"The dishes are on the table."
Il (computer) portatile era sopra alla scrivania.	"The laptop was on the desk."
La sveglia è sopra al comodino.	"The alarm clock is on the bedside table."

3) In informal Italian, you can use *su* to express indefinite or rough quantities. You can convey the same meaning in formal Italian with the synonym *circa* ("about," "nearly," "approximately").

For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
La giacca costa sui (i.e. *su* + *i*) *cento euro.*	"The jacket costs around a hundred euros."
Federico è un uomo sui (i.e. *su* + *i*) *quarant'anni.*	"Federico is a man in his forties."
Ci vorranno sui cinque giorni per finire il lavoro.	"It'll take approximately five days to complete the job."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Rondanini Pietà **(La Pietà Rondanini)**

Michelangelo's *Rondanini Pietà* is deemed to be the artist's last, unfinished masterpiece before his death. It's presently held at the *Castello Sforzesco* in Milan.

In 1561, Michelangelo himself presented Antonio del Francese with this stunning gift. In 1774, the *Rondanini* family bought the statue, from which it took its current name. In the last part of his life, Michelangelo was obsessed by religious themes. He sculpted two, perhaps even three sculptures of *Pietà* ("piety," "compassion") he wanted to place on his own tomb. Since Michelangelo held his works to be below the sky-high standards he set for himself, he did not want to complete any of them. The *Rondanini Pietà* is the trio's most intense and passionate: the slender form of Jesus Christ seems to be fading into the arms and breast of his mother, Mary. She holds her son almost effortlessly, as if he were a weightless, ethereal being.
You can see the *Rondanini Pietà* at the following link:
http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/44/Michelangelo_piet%C3%A0_rondanini.jpg.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #16

Are You Between a Rock and a Hard Place in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#16

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Spegni la radio dai, che chiamo Martina.
2. John : Ok, dille che saremo lì fra circa quaranta minuti.
3. Laura : Va bene.
4. Laura : (al telefono) Ciao Martina! Sì, stasera pensavamo di andare al cinema ma tra poco inizia lo spettacolo e non faremo in tempo per il traffico.
5. Martina : (al telefono) Allora venite da me che tra poco ci sarà una festa in pigiama!
6. Laura : (al telefono) Grazie Martina, saremo lì tra circa quaranta minuti!
7. Martina : (al telefono) OK, vi aspetto ragazzi, ciao!

ENGLISH

1. Laura : Come on; turn off the radio. I'll call Martina.
2. John : Okay, tell her we'll be there in about forty minutes.
3. Laura : Fine.
4. Laura : (on the phone) Hi Martina! Yes, tonight we were thinking of going to the movies but the show starts shortly and we won't make it in time because of the traffic.
5. Martina : (on the phone) Then come to my place, there will be a pajamas party soon!
6. Laura : (on the phone) Thanks Martina! We'll be there in about forty minutes!
7. Martina : (on the phone) Okay, I'll be waiting for you guys, bye!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
festa	feast, holiday, party	noun	feminine
quaranta	forty	cardinal number	
aspettare	to wait	noun	
radio	radio	noun	feminine
pigiama	pyjamas/pajamas	noun	
minuti	minutes	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Questa festa è proprio noiosa! "This party is really boring!"	Benvenuti alla mia festa di compleanno. "Welcome to my birthday party."
Facciamo una festa? "Shall we have a party?"	Possiamo pagare la macchina in quaranta rate! "We can pay for the car in forty installments!"
Ho quaranta anni. "I am forty years old."	Questo palazzo ha quaranta piani. "This building has forty stories."
Non aspettarmi! "Do not wait for me!"	Odio aspettarti per ore! "I hate waiting for you for hours!"
Aspettami! "Wait for me!"	Aspetta un attimo! "Wait a moment!"
Ho aspettato fino all'una, ma non è venuto. "I waited until one, but he didn't show up."	Sono in ritardo, mi aspetti? "I'm late; would you wait for me?"
radio portatile portable radio	radio notiziario news radio
Ascoltiamo la radio. "Let's listen to the radio."	Ho comprato una nuova radio. "I bought a new radio."
Ascolti la radio? "Do you listen to the radio?"	Voglio comprare un pigiama. "I want to buy some pajamas."
Dammi cinque minuti. "Give me five minutes."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Italian Prepositions tra and fra.
Allora venite da me che tra poco ci sarà una festa in pigiama!
"Then come to my place, there will be a pajama party soon!"

The prepositions *tra* and *fra* are utterly equivalent to each other and thus you can freely interchange them.

You can use them in the following circumstances:

1) To express the amount of time that elapses before an action takes place in the future. For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Inizierò a lavorare tra tre giorni.	"I'll start working in three days."
Lo spettacolo comincia fra cinque minuti.	"The show starts in five minutes."
Ci vediamo tra un quarto d'ora.	"I'll see you in fifteen minutes."

2) To express the position, both in proper and figurative sense, of something/someone between two other terms. For instance:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
La chiesa si trova fra la piazza e il parco.	"The church is between the square and the park."
C'è del risentimento tra loro.	"There's a harsh feeling between them."
L'anfiteatro si trova fra Via Mazzini e il comune.	"The amphitheatre lies between Via Mazzini and the City Hall."

3) When talking about groups, you can use it to single out some members or parts.

For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Sono l'unica tra noi che parla tedesco.	"I'm the only one among us that speaks German."
Era il solo ragazzo della festa, come si dice in italiano: "Beato tra le donne."	"He was the only guy at the party, as it goes in Italian: (lit.) "'Lucky fellow among women.'"
Ci sono tre ragazze tra loro che vogliono studiare italiano.	"There are three girls among them who want to study Italian."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Parco Sempione

Parco Sempione ("Sempione Park") is an expansive green area located in the very center of Milan. It was constructed as part of a larger project, the renovation of *Castello Sforzesco*. Its present name traces back to 1906, specifically to the inauguration of the *Sempione* tunnel. That tunnel was the main entrance gate to the city for those who came from the north, in particular Swiss travelers.

The architect Emilio Alemagna planned the park according to the British romantic model of the "perfect" garden, strongly influenced by the "picturesque" aesthetic canon. Paths and gardens follow irregular patterns and are connected to each other by small lakes, naturalistic canals, and a splendid entry bridge. Since its inauguration, the park has always been the most popular recreational meeting place for the inhabitants of Milan. This role is matched only by its artistic significance; it hosts many world-famous permanent exhibitions, such as *La Triennale*, *Palazzo d'Arte*, and *Acquario civico di Milano* (Milan's Aquarium). The park has also hosted plenty of temporary expos, of which the International Exhibition in 1906 is certainly the most important.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #17

What Do You Do With a Man in Polka Dot Pajamas?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#17

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Laura : Ciao Martina! Grazie per stasera, con quel traffico non saremmo mai arrivati in tempo.
2. Martina : Di niente ragazzi, unitevi al party con noi!
3. Laura : Wow, sembra divertente!
4. John : Ma non abbiamo i pigiama con noi, purtroppo.
5. Martina : Non vi preoccupate e prendete qualcosa da bere!
6. Laura : Ma...quello non è Paolo?
7. Martina : Ah, sì, era qui con noi che vi aspettava!

ENGLISH

1. Laura : Hi Martina! Thanks for tonight; with that traffic, we would have never made it in time.
2. Martina : Don't mention it guys, and join us for the party!
3. Laura : Wow, this looks fun!
4. John : But sadly, we don't have pajamas with us.
5. Martina : Don't worry and grab something to drink!
6. Laura : But...isn't it Paolo over there?
7. Martina : Oh, yes, he was with us, waiting for you!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
arrivare	to arrive, to come	verb	
stasera	tonight	noun	
purtroppo	unfortunately	adverb	
preoccuparsi	to worry	verb	
divertente	funny, fun, amusing	adjective	
tempo	time, weather, tense	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Siamo arrivati a Roma. "We've arrived in Rome."	Sono arrivati i vicini. "The neighbors have arrived."
Arrivo! "I'm coming!"	Ci vediamo stasera per cena! "See you tonight for dinner!"
Stasera usciamo? "Shall we go out tonight?"	Possiamo uscire insieme stasera? "Can we go out together tonight?"
Stasera usciamo? "Shall we go out tonight?"	Purtroppo ho dimenticato le chiavi a casa. "Unfortunately, I forgot the keys at home."
Purtroppo il concerto è già finito. "Unfortunately, the concert finished already."	Non ti preoccupare! "Don't worry!"
Non ti preoccupare, non facciamo tardi. "Don't worry, we won't be late."	Se ti preoccupi non dormi bene. "If you worry, you won't sleep well."
Penso che il film fosse veramente divertente. "I think that the movie was really fun."	Gli spettacoli di Crozza sono sempre divertenti. "Crozza's shows are always entertaining."
Il film che abbiamo visto ieri sera è stato davvero divertente. "The movie we saw last night was really funny."	È divertente giocare a calcio. "It's fun to play soccer."
Oggi è bel tempo. "Today, the weather is good."	Scusami, non ho tempo per aiutarti. "Sorry, I have no time to help you."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Italian Preposition *con*.
Di niente ragazzi, unitevi al party con noi!
"Don't mention it guys, and join us for the party!"

You can use the preposition *con* as follows:

1) To express the person with whom the subject performs an action. It answers the question "with whom?"

For instance:

Italian	"English Translation"
Ho giocato con Elena.	"I played with Elena."
Siamo andati in Italia con Mike.	"We went to Italy with Mike."
Vuoi studiare con me?	"Do you want to study with me?"

2) To express the way in which the main action is done. It answers the question "how?"

For instance:

Italian	"English Translation"
Hai lavorato con estrema cura.	(literally) "You worked with extreme care." "You worked carefully."
Studio l'italiano con impegno.	(literally) "I study Italian with dedication." "I study Italian diligently."
Questo libro è scritto con poco impegno.	(literally) "This book is written with little effort." "This book is badly written."

3) It conveys specific traits, both real and figurative, of objects.

For example:

Italian	"English Translation"
Ho visto una moto con su due persone.	"I saw a motorbike with two people on it."
Mi piacciono i pantaloni con le righe rosse.	"I like the red striped pants."
Avete venduto la macchina con il portasci?	"Have you sold the car with the ski rack?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

A Legend of Parco Sempione

A legend from Milan says that the phantom of a lady dressed in black, whose face is hidden by either a leather mask or a night-black veil, depending on the version, haunts *Parco Sempione* (Sempione Park). According to the legend, the lady appears surrounded by a violet perfume, takes the park's visitors by their right arm, and leads them through the alleys to a magnificent villa that they otherwise could not access or see.

The villa's rooms are draped in black, including a fine-looking tester (canopy) bed, where the lady would spend a night of passion with her temporary lovers. After sating her lust, the lady would take the lovers back to the place where she first met them. Those who try to go back to the villa are incapable of finding any path leading to it or any other trace that could suggest the presence of such a place. The legend also says that a few courageous, foolhardy lovers tried to uncover the true identity of the black lady, unveiling her face only to find an ancient skull under the precious clothing.

In fact, this legend does not seem to differ much from similar legends of other countries, but it is an integral part of Milan's urban legends.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #18

If You Thought Your Italian Polka Dot Lover Only Had Eyes for You...

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#18

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Ciao Paolo! Come va?
2. Paolo : Bene, grazie.
3. John : Martina ci ha detto che ci stavi aspettando.
4. Paolo : Sì, vi ho aspettato per mezz'ora circa, volevo chiederti un consiglio su una cosa.
5. John : Dimmi pure!
6. Paolo : Stasera parto per Roma, per lavoro, e volevo dirlo a Martina.
7. John : Cosa, per lavoro? E quando tornerai?
8. Paolo : Starò a Roma per circa un mese. Ma volevo chiederti. Tu ti intendi di dichiarazioni d'amore?
9. John : Eh? Per Martina??

ENGLISH

1. John : Hi Paolo! How is it going?
2. Paolo : Fine, thank you.
3. John : Martina told us you were waiting for us.
4. Paolo : Yes, I've been waiting for you for about half an hour, I wanted to ask you a piece of advice about something.
5. John : Tell me, what's the matter?
6. Paolo : I will leave tonight for Rome, for work, and I wanted to tell it to Martina.
7. John : What, for work? And when will you be back?
8. Paolo : I will be in Rome for about a month. But I wanted to ask you—are you familiar with declarations of love?
9. John : Eh? For Martina??

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
chiedere	to ask	verb	
partire	to leave, to start, to take off	verb	
tornare	to go back, to come back, to get back	verb	
consiglio	advice	noun	masculine
cosa	thing, matter	noun	
dichiarazione	statement, declaration, allegation	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ti chiederò solo un'altra volta. "I will only ask you one more time."	Chiedi a mamma le chiavi di casa. "Ask mom for the key to the house."
Chiediamo del pane? "Shall we ask for some bread?"	Ho chiesto una bambola. "I asked for a doll."
Posso chiederti una cosa? "Can I ask you something?"	Hai chiesto? "Did you ask?"
Domani partirò per Milano. "I'll leave for Milan tomorrow."	Sono partito alle sei del mattino. "I left at six o'clock a.m."
Domani parto per Roma. "Tomorrow, I am leaving for Rome."	Luca torna da scuola verso l'una. "Luke comes back from school about one p.m."
Ieri sono tornato a casa tardi. "Yesterday I got back home late."	Vorrei tornare a S. Gimignano. "I would like to go back to S. Gimignano."
Segui il mio consiglio. "Follow my advice."	Un consiglio importante. "An important advice."
Segui il mio consiglio. "Follow my advice."	Fa la cosa giusta. "Do the right thing."
Questa è la Dichiarazione d'Indipendenza. "This is the Declaration of Independence."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Italian Simple Preposition *per*.
Stasera Parto per Roma, per lavoro, e volevo dirlo a Martina.
"I will leave tonight for Rome, for work, and I wanted to tell it to Martina."

You can use the preposition *per* as follows:

1) To express movement, both real and figurative, that occurs through something.

For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Siamo passati per la via più corta.	"We took the shortest route."
Camminiamo per la piazza.	"We walk through the square."
La sua mente vagò per molte vie.	"His mind wandered through many paths."

2) To express the passing of time.

For instance:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Ti ho pensato per molte settimane.	"I have been thinking about you for several weeks."
Bisognerà lavorare per molti giorni.	"We'll have to work for several days."
Vi hanno aspettato per pochi minuti.	"They waited for you a few minutes."

3) The destination the subject is leaving for; Italians particularly use it with the verb *partire* ("to leave").

For instance:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Parto per Napoli.	"I'm leaving for Naples."
Hai comprato il biglietto per Venezia?	"Have you bought the ticket to Venice?"
L'aereo è partito per la Francia.	"The airplane left for France."

4) The end, aim, or purpose that explains why someone does something.

For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Mi sono sposato per amore.	"I got married for love."
L'ha detto per scherzare.	"He was joking."
Non l'hai fatto per me.	"You didn't do it for me."

5) The cause or reason why something happened.

For example:

Italian	**"English Translation"**
Il frullatore si è rotto per sfortuna.	"The blender broke down due to bad luck."
Per mancanza di sensibilità, hai detto qualcosa di maleducato.	"You have been rude due to a lack of sensitivity."
Apro la finestra per fare entrare aria fresca.	"I open the window to let fresh air come inside."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Teatro Piccolo **of Milan**

The *Teatro Piccolo* of Milan was the first Italian permanent theatre. Two important artists founded the theatre: the director and playwright Giorgio Strehler, and the actor Paolo Grassi. In 1991, the theatre became the *teatro d'Europa* ("European Theatre").

Since its inaugural play, Gorkij's *Albergo dei poveri* ("Hotel of the Poor"), the theatre has aimed to become a reference point for every person interested in theatre, regardless of social, economic, and cultural differences. Its repertoire has always included international and Italian plays, thus attracting experimental artists and directors. The idea of the theatre as a general, collective experimental entity has gradually replaced the view of theatre as an event focused on "the great actor." Actors view the theatrical space as a sort of "laboratory," a training space where they can develop many different skills under the guiding role of Strehler and Grassi. The theatre has slowly become a model for other rising Italian and European theatres to emulate.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #19

How Far Will You Go for Love in Italy?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#19

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : Ehi Paolo! Sei riuscito a pensare a qualcosa per la dichiarazione?
2. Paolo : Ho comprato questi.
3. John : Wow! Palloncini a forma di cuore, sarà una serata speciale.
4. Paolo : Sì, voglio riempire quella stanza, portarla lì e farle la dichiarazione.
5. John : Bellissima idea! Ah, Paolo, c'è la madre di Martina, presentati.
6. Paolo : (si avvicina) Piacere signora. Io sono Paolo, come sta?
7. Maria : Molto piacere Paolo. Da dove vieni?
8. Paolo : Io sono nato a Modena, ora vivo e lavoro a Bologna.
9. Maria : Divertitevi stasera, mi raccomando!
10. Paolo : Grazie signora, arrivederci. (si allontana, parla a John) Ehi, mi aiuti a gonfiarli?
11. John : Certo, ti aiuto io.
12. Paolo : Grazie, dai entriamo e mettiamoci al lavoro.
13. (dopo circa un'ora)
14. John : (ansimando) Uff! Paolo, ma quanti ne hai comprati?
15. Paolo : Circa duecento. Siamo quasi a metà.
16. John : Eh??

ENGLISH

1. John : Hey Paolo! Did you manage to think about something for the declaration?
2. Paolo : I bought these.
3. John : Wow. Heart-shaped balloons, it will be a special night.
4. Paolo : Yes, I want to fill that room, take her there, and then declare myself to her.
5. John : Beautiful idea! Oh, Paolo, there's Martina's mother, introduce yourself to her.
6. Paolo : (gets closer) Nice to meet you. I'm Paolo, how do you do?
7. Maria : Nice to meet you, Paolo. Where are you from?
8. Paolo : I was born in Modena, now I live and work in Bologna.
9. Maria : Please have fun tonight!
10. Paolo : Thanks, goodbye. (moves away, talks to John) Hey. Will you help me blow them up?
11. John : Sure, I'll help you.
12. Paolo : Thanks! Come on, let's go inside and let's get to work.
13. (about an hour later)
14. John : (panting) Uff! Paolo, how many did you buy?
15. Paolo : Around two hundred. We are almost halfway through.
16. John : Eh??

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
qualcosa	something	indefinite pronoun	
speciale	special	adjective	masculine
riuscire	to succeed, manage, be able	verb	
cuore	heart	noun	masculine
serata	evening	noun	
palloncino	balloon	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Hai qualcosa da mangiare?	Vorrei mangiare qualcosa di dolce.
"Do you have something to eat?"	"I'd like to eat something sweet."

C'è uno speciale sulla scuola. "There's a special about school."	Oggi e' un giorno speciale per tutti noi. "Today it is a special day for all of us."
È un'offerta speciale. "It's a special offer."	Non riesco a concentrarmi. "I am not able to concentrate."
Hai un cuore d'oro. "You have a golden heart."	Che bella serata! "What a lovely evening."
È stata una serata indimenticabile. "It's been an unforgettable evening."	Ho comprato tre palloncini colorati. "I bought three colored balloons."
Sto gonfiando un palloncino. "I'm blowing up a balloon."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Italian Formal and Informal Forms of Greetings. In Addition, We Will Review Three Frequently Used Verbs.
Io sono nato a Modena, ora vivo e lavoro a Bologna.
"I was born in Modena, now I live and work in Bologna."

We can divide the Italian forms of greetings into two different categories, according to the kind of speech we wish to employ.

In informal and colloquial Italian, *ciao* is the most common form of greeting, and Italians use it as both "hi" and "goodbye." There are other similar forms of greetings that we may employ with our acquaintances. For instance, in the dialogue above, John says *Ehi Paolo...*, thus implying a good degree of familiarity with his interlocutor. Please note that we may use the expressions *ciao* and *ehi* together.

The following samples of informal greetings show a typical informal Italian conversation.

Italian	**"English"**
Ciao Mario, come stai?	"Hi Mario, how are you doing?"
Ehi Luca, è tanto tempo che non ti vedo!	"Hey Luca, long time no see!"
Ehi Antonio, ciao!	(literally) "Hey, Antonio, hi!"

The forms of greeting in formal and standard Italian equal their English counterparts. The most frequently used are: *buongiorno/ buon giorno* ("good morning"), *buonpomeriggio/ buon pomeriggio* ("good afternoon"), and *buonasera/ buona sera* ("good evening"). Note that we may freely employ both the aforementioned forms, although in formal written language we tend to use the variant of two separated words.

When taking our leave, in formal Italian we use *arrivederci* or *arrivederla* (both meaning "farewell"), as Paolo does with Martina's mother. Please note that *arrivederla* is slightly more formal than *arrivederci*.

Although these forms of greetings translate literally in English, the employment of some of them is slightly different from their English equivalents.

Italians often use *buongiorno* at any time of the day between dawn and dusk, whereas they employ *buonasera* during the evening and at night.

In addition, Italians exclusively use *buonanotte* ("good night"), meaning "have a good night's sleep," before going to bed.

In the dialogue above, Paolo replies to Maria's question saying *Io sono nato a Modena, ora vivo e lavoro a Bologna*. Maria uses the verb *venire* ("to be from"), which is always followed by the preposition *da*.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
Io vengo da Milano.	"I'm from Milan."
Noi veniamo dall'Italia.	"We're from Italy."
Loro vengono dalla Francia.	"They are from France."

Paolo did not reply using the verb Maria provides. He instead says where he was born, as well as where he lives and works, a reply that is perfectly acceptable in Italian. The verbs *nascere* ("to be born"), *vivere* ("to live"), and *lavorare* ("to work") are always followed by the preposition *a*.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
Sono nato in Italia.	"I was born in Italy."
Vivono a Torino.	"They live in Turin."
Lavoro a New York.	"I work in New York."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Palazzo Ca Pesaro

Palazzo Ca Pesaro ("Ca Pesaro Palace") is in one of the most beautiful and skillfully constructed ancient palaces of Venice. Nowadays, it hosts the *Galleria internazionale d'arte moderna* ("International Gallery of Modern Art") and a prominent *Museo d'arte Orientale* ("Museum of Oriental Art," located on the palace's third floor).

The architect, Baldassare Longhena, planned the palace in the mid-sixteenth century; however, the building was still unfinished upon his death in 1682. His colleague, Gian Antonio Gaspari, completed the work in 1710, closely respecting Longhena's original project.

The *Galleria internazionale d'arte moderna* has been, especially in the twentieth century, the most important center for avant-garde and anti-academic artistic movements. It became a sort of intellectual workshop for artists, critics, and that part of the general public that didn't agree with the main policy of the other important center of contemporary art in Venice, the Biennale. If you wish to know more about this must-see museum, please visit the following website:
http://www.arteorientale.org/sito/home.html
(An English version of the website is available.)

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #20

Are You Too Excited to Count in Italian?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#20

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : (ansimando) Ehi Paolo, come va coi palloncini, quanti te ne mancano?
2. Paolo : Ne ho ancora venti da gonfiare.
3. John : Io sono quasi alla fine.
4. Paolo : Bravo, grazie.
5. John : Niente, non ti preoccupare. Ma forse ho fatto troppo in fretta.
6. Paolo : Tutto ok?
7. John : Mi gira solo un pò la testa. Sono venticinque anni ma mi sento come se ne avessi settanta.
8. Paolo : Vuoi dire "ho venticinque anni", non "sono".
9. Johhn : Ah si, scusami! Ho venticinque anni.
10. Paolo : Se ti gira la testa puoi rallentare, tanto abbiamo tempo.
11. John : Ok allora.
12. Paolo : Sì, vai fuori e prendi un pò d'aria.

ENGLISH

1. John : (panting) Hey Paolo, how is it going with the balloons, how many do you have left?
2. Paolo : I still have twenty to blow up.
3. John : I'm almost done.
4. Paolo : Good, thank you.
5. John : Nothing, never mind. But maybe I did it too fast.
6. Paolo : Is everything okay?
7. John : I feel a bit dizzy. I have twenty-five years old, but I feel as if I were seventy.
8. Paolo : You mean "I am twenty-five," not "I have."
9. John : Oh, yes, sorry! I am twenty-five years old.
10. Paolo : If you feel dizzy, you can slow down. We have time.
11. John : Okay then.
12. Paolo : Yes, go out and get some air.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
testa	head	noun	feminine
fine	end	noun	
fretta	rush, hurry	noun	
preoccuparsi	to worry	verb	
girare	to turn, go around, circle, wander	verb	
mancare	to be lacking, missing	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Indossa il casco per proteggere la testa. Wear a helmet to protect your head.	testa e collo head and neck
Indossa il casco per proteggere la testa. Wear a helmet to protect your head.	Lucia ha sbattuto la testa. "Lucia has banged her head."
Alla fine abbiamo optato per il modello più nuovo. "In the end we chose the newest model."	Che fretta c'è? "What's the hurry?"
Non ti preoccupare! "Don't worry!"	Non ti preoccupare, non facciamo tardi. "Don't worry, we won't be late."
Se ti preoccupi non dormi bene. "If you worry, you won't sleep well."	Ieri ho girato per la città. "Yesterday, I went around the city."
Mi manchi. "I miss you."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on Italian Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers.
Mi gira solo un pò la testa. Sono venticinque anni ma mi sento come se ne avessi settanta.
"I feel a bit dizzy. I have twenty-five years old, but I feel as if I were seventy."

When expressing age in Italian, we use the verb *avere* ("to have"), whereas in English, we use *essere* ("to be").

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
Io ho venti anni.	"I'm twenty years old."
Noi abbiamo trent'anni.	"We are thirty years old."
Loro hanno quindici anni.	"They are fifteen years old."

Note that in the second sample sentence, the cardinal number *trenta* ("thirty") drops its ending vowel *a* because it is followed by the word *anni* (literally, "years"), which starts with the same vowel. You should employ this written custom whenever a cardinal number that ends with the vowel *a* is followed by the word *anni*. This happens only with the following cardinal numbers:

1. *trenta* ("thirty")
2. *quaranta* ("forty")
3. *cinquanta* ("fifty")
4. *sessanta* ("sixty")
5. *settanta* ("seventy")
6. *ottanta* ("eighty")
7. *novanta* ("ninety")

Please note that the rule also applies when we use these numbers in compounds, such as *centotrenta* ("one hundred thirty"), *centoquaranta* ("one hundred forty"), *centocinquanta* ("one hundred fifty"), and so forth.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
Luigi ha quarant'anni.	"Luigi is forty years old."
Loredana ha appena compiuto cinquant'anni.	"Loredana just turned fifty."
La guerra terminò centocinquant'anni fa.	"The war ended one hundred fifty years ago."

Contrary to English, when expressing time in Italian, we use the cardinal numbers rather than the ordinal. In addition, we always write the first letter of a month's name in lower case.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
Oggi è il cinque maggio.	(literally) "Today is five May." (meaning) "Today is May the fifth."
Le lezioni inizieranno il venti ottobre.	(literally) "Lessons will start twenty October." (meaning) "Lessons will start on October the twentieth."
Ci vediamo il ventisei dicembre.	(literally) "I'll see you on twenty-six December." (meaning) "I'll see you on December the twenty-sixth."

Apart from the difference in usage illustrated above, Italian ordinal numbers work exactly as their English counterparts. This means we use them to indicate a position within a given order, even when the limits of that order are not stated.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
Il vostro posto è nella quinta fila.	"Your seat is in the fifth row."
Questa è la terza volta che ti dico di pulire la tua camera!	"This is the third time I've told you to clean your room!"
Guardate la seconda imagine partendo dal basso.	"Take a look at the second picture, starting from the bottom."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Palazzo Ducale

The *Palazzo Ducale* of Venice was most likely the most important building in the whole city. Originally built as a fortified stronghold, it was subsequently renovated repeatedly to take a more elegant and less military shape throughout the Middle Ages.

The name of the palace entrance gate, *Porta della Carta* (literally, "Gate of the Paper"), derives from the ancient habit of posting up laws, decrees, and in general, all official state documents whose interest was deemed to be of public domain. Giovanni and Bartolomeo Bon built the gate in 1442. Its gothic style is richly adorned with sculptures portraying many different images, including representations of cardinal virtues, the patron saint of the city ("St. Mark"), and the image of Justice holding a sword and a scale. Among its many important pieces of art, *Palazzo Ducale* boasts the stunning *Scala dei Giganti* ("The Steps of Giants"), which takes its name from two colossal statues of Mars and Neptune, symbols of the Republic's military prowess and supremacy over the seas, respectively. The steps were also the place where the ritual of the *doge* election used to take place.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #21

Can You Figure It Out in Italian?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#21

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Paolo : Finito!
2. John : È stata un'impresa ma ce l'abbiamo fatta!
3. Paolo : Grazie John! Ora devo solo andare a chiamare Martina nell'altra stanza.
4. John : Ok dai, vai!
5. Paolo : Sono nervoso...come faccio?
6. John : Vai semplicemente di là e la chiami!
7. Paolo : Ma non saprei cosa dirle...dammi un'idea.
8. John : Invitala a bere qualcosa e con una scusa la porti qui.
9. Paolo : Hai ragione, farò così.
10. (Paolo esce)
11. Paolo : Ehi Martina...ti va di bere qualcosa?
12. Martina : Ah, grazie Paolo, ma come vedi sto già bevendo questa birra.
13. (Paolo torna da John)
14. Paolo : Non funziona! Aveva già da bere! Come posso fare ora?
15. John : Dille che vuoi farle sentire una canzone che sicuramente le piacerà, e invitala qui.
16. Paolo : Ok, ora provo. Tu non fare entrare nessuno mi raccomando!

ENGLISH

1. Paolo : Finished!
2. John : It was a struggle, but we made it!
3. Paolo : Thanks, John! Now I only have to go call Martina in the other room.
4. John : Okay, then go!
5. Paolo : I'm nervous...how can I do it?
6. John : Simply go there and call her!
7. Paolo : But I wouldn't know what to say...give me an idea.
8. John : Invite her to drink something and then bring her here with an excuse.
9. Paolo : You're right. I'll do so.
10. (Paolo goes out)
11. Paolo : Hey Martina...do you want to drink something?
12. Martina : Ah, thanks, Paolo, but as you can see, I'm already drinking this beer.
13. (Paolo goes back to John)
14. Paolo : It doesn't work! She already has a drink! What can I do now?
15. John : Tell her you want to make her listen to a song that she will surely like and invite her here.
16. Paolo : Okay, I will try now. Please don't let anyone enter in this room!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
nervoso	nervous, edgy, bad-tempered	adjective	
chiamare	to call	verb	
idea	idea, thought	noun	feminine
impresa	exploit, struggle	noun	
stanza	room	noun	feminine
semplicemente	simply	adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Sono sempre molto nervosa prima di un esame.	È sempre nervoso.
"I'm always very nervous before an exam."	"He is always nervous."

Assicurati di avere il codice pronto quando chiami l'ufficio postale. "Make sure to have the tracking number ready, when you are calling the post office. "	Ti chiamo più tardi, dopo che avrò finito i compiti "I will call you later, after I'm done with my homework."
Hai chiamato tuo fratello? "Did you call your brother?"	Chiamami più tardi. "Call me later."
Che idea brillante! "What a brilliant idea!"	Hai avuto un'ottima idea! "You had a great idea!"
È stata un'impresa. "It was a struggle."	Questa stanza ha due finestre. "This room has two windows."
Questa è la mia stanza. "This is my room."	Lui è semplicemente il migliore. "He's simply the best."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Some of the Most Frequently Used Idiomatic Expressions With the Verb *Andare* ("to go").
Ora devo solo andare a chiamare Martina nell'altra stanza.
"Now I only have to go call Martina in the other room."

The usage of the Italian irregular verb *andare* ("to go") is similar to that of its English equivalent.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
Vado a casa.	"I'm going home."
Andiamo al cinema.	"We go to the cinema."
Vanno al ristorante.	"They go to the restaurant."

In addition, we also use the verb *andare* in various idiomatic expressions, such as the one Paolo uses when he asks Martina *ti va di bere qualcosa?* ("Would you like to have a drink?") The following are some of the most frequently used idiomatic expressions including the verb *andare*:

Italian	**"English"**
Michele ha detto che Lucia si è lasciata andare. (*lasciarsi andare*)	(literally) "Michele said Lucia let herself go." (meaning) "Michele said Lucia neglected herself."
Io penso che Paolo e Martina vadano a braccetto. (*andare a braccetto*)	(literally) "I think Paolo and Martina go arm in arm." (meaning) "I think Paolo and Martina get along very well."
Il tuo progetto sta andando a gonfie vele! (*andare a gonfie vele*)	(literally) "Your project is going in full sail!" (meaning) "Your project is going perfectly!"
Volevo andare in vacanza in Spagna, ma è andato tutto a monte/andato a rotoli. (*andare a monte/andare a rotoli*)	(literally) "I wanted to go on vacation in Spain, but it all went to the mountain." (meaning) "I wanted to go on vacation in Spain, but it all fell through."
Il nuovo iPod è andato a ruba. (*andare a ruba*)	(literally) "The new iPod went to robbery." (meaning) "The new iPod sold like hot cakes."
Quando cominciò il nuovo lavoro, Serena non sapeva dove andare a parare. (*andare a parare**)	(literally) "When she started the new job, Serena didn't know where to aim." (meaning) "When Serena started the new job, she didn't know what to do."
Il primo tentativo di raggiungere la luna andò a vuoto. (*andare a vuoto*)	(literally) "The first attempt to reach the moon went into emptiness." (meaning) "The first attempt to reach the moon failed."
Se io fossi in te, ci andrei coi piedi di piombo. (*andare coi piedi di piombo*)	(literally) "If I were you, I'd go with leaden feet." (meaning) "If I were you, I'd be very careful."
La nostra ultima speranza di vittoria è andata in fumo *.* (*andare in fumo*)	(literally) "Our last hope to win went into smoke." (meaning) "Our last hope to win dissolved into thin air."
La mancanza di rispetto mi fa andare su tutte le furie. (*andare su tutte le furie*)	(literally) "Lack of respect makes me go on all furies." (meaning) "Lack of respect stirs my anger."

* We use the idiomatic expression *andare a parare* exclusively in negative statements, mainly with the verb *sapere* ("to know") followed by the adverb *dove* ("where").

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Museo Correr

The *museo Correr* ("Correr Museum") is located in the *Sestriere of San Marco* area in Venice. Its large collection of pieces of art is hosted in the *ala napoleonica* ("Napoleonic wing"), built by the will of the French leader, in order to establish a new area where the government could run official ceremonies.

We can trace the origins of the museum back to the last private owner of the building, Teodoro Correr, whom the museum is named after. In his will, he donated the palace to the city of Venice, which resolved to make it a permanent museum due to its already considerable art collection. In fact, its collection grew in size so considerably that at a certain point it became necessary to transfer some pieces of art to another site, the *Fondaco dei Turchi* ("Turkish Warehouse").
The museum is divided into different *sale* ("halls") that host works of artists ranging from the fourteenth to the nineteenth centuries. Hall thirteen contains works on the *La Battaglia di Lepanto* ("the Battle of Lepanto"), including a terra cotta bust of Francesco Duodo and a portrait of the Venetian commander Sebastiano Venier. If you wish to know more about this museum, please visit the following website:
http://www.venetia.it/m_correr_ita.htm.
(No English version of the website is available.)

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #22

Shhh! Don't Tell Her, But I Have Been an Italian Fool for Love!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#22

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. John : (bisbigliando a Paolo) Ora, vai, diglielo!
2. Paolo : (bisbigliando a John) Ora vado. (si avvicina a Martina e schiarisce la voce) Ehm, Martina, sai c'è questa canzone bellissima che volevo farti sentire, potresti venire un attimo di là?
3. Martina : Paolo, ma siamo ad un party! Divertiti, dai, penseremo dopo alla canzone.
4. Paolo : Va bene.
5. John : (bisbigliando dietro Paolo) Non mollare, insisti!
6. Paolo : Ho pensato che. Ho pensato che volevo farti vedere una cosa di là.
7. Martina : Cosa?
8. Paolo : Ehm, non posso dirtelo, è un affare di sicurezza nazionale.
9. Martina : Eh? Sicurezza nazionale? Ma sei ubriaco?
10. Paolo : No, per niente. Vieni di là un minuto.
11. Martina : (scocciata) Ok, ok, cosa sarà mai? Ancora il tuo lavoro?
12. Paolo : Entra e vedi di persona.
13. Martina : Wow! E ora questo cos'è?

ENGLISH

1. John : (whispering to Paolo) Now! Come on, tell her!
2. Paolo : (whispering to John) I'm going. (he gets close to Martina and clears his voice) Ahem, Martina, you know there's this beautiful song I want you to listen to, could you come in the other room for a second?
3. Martina : Paolo, but we're at a party! Have fun, come on, we'll think about the song later.
4. Paolo : All right.
5. John : (whispering behind Paolo) Don't give up, insist!
6. Paolo : I thought that...I thought that I wanted you to see something in the other room.
7. Martina : What?
8. Paolo : Ahem, I can't tell you. It's a matter of national security.
9. Martina : Eh? National security? Are you drunk?
10. Paolo : Not at all. Come over there for a minute.
11. Martina : (annoyed) Okay, okay, what would that ever be? Your job again?
12. Paolo : Enter and see it yourself.
13. Martina : Wow! And now what's this?

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
pensare	to think, believe	verb	
avvicinarsi	to come close, approach	verb	
schiarire	to clear	verb	
bisbigliare	to whisper	verb	
sicurezza	security, safety	noun	feminine
ubriacarsi	to get drunk	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Penso che arriverò in ritardo. "I think I'll be late."	Cosa ne pensi? "What do you think about it?"
Avvicinati! "Come closer!"	Mi schiarisco la voce. "I'm clearing my throat."

Non bisbigliate durante la lezione, per favore. "Don't whisper during the lesson, please."	Questa è una prigione di massima sicurezza. "This is a maximum-security prison."
Si è ubriacato. "He got drunk."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Usage of the Auxiliary Verbs *Essere* and *Avere* in the *Passato Prossimo* Tense.
Ho pensato che. Ho pensato che volevo farti vedere una cosa di là.
"I thought that...I thought that I wanted you to see something in the other room."

We construct the *passato prossimo* tense by using the present form of the auxiliary verb, conjugated according to the person it refers to, followed by the past participle of the main verb:

Subject + Auxiliary Verb (present tense of either *essere* or *avere*) + Main Verb (past participle)

Whenever a verb requires the auxiliary verb *essere*, we need to conjugate its past participle according to the gender and number of the subject it refers to.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
Marco è tornato (singular masculine) *a casa.*	"Marco came back home."
Luisa è stata (singular feminine) *in Grecia.*	"Luisa has been to Greece."
Le ragazze sono partite (plural feminine) *ieri.*	"The girls left yesterday."

Verbs requiring the auxiliary verb *avere* do not change their ending vowels.

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
Antonio ha pensato di comprare una nuova macchina.	"Antonio thought of buying a new car."
Maria ha perso le chiavi.	"Maria lost the keys."
Elisa e Roberta hanno visto un film.	"Elisa and Roberta watched a movie."

Note that when we use them as main verbs, *essere* and *avere* require their respective present forms as auxiliary verbs. The following reference tables display, respectively, the *passato prossimo* of the verbs *essere,* meaning "to be" (The plural persons are traditionally presented in the plural masculine form, ending with the vowel *i*.) and *avere,* meaning "to have".

Passato Prossimo

***essere* ("to be")**

Italian	**"English"**
io sono ***stato/stata***	"I have been"/"was"
tu sei ***stato/stata***	"you have been"/"were"
lui/lei è ***stato/stata***	"he/she/it has been"/"was"
noi siamo ***stati/state***	"we have been"/"were"
voi siete ***stati/state***	"you have been"/"were"
loro sono ***stati/state***	"they have been"/"were"

Passato Prossimo

***avere* ("to have")**

Italian	**"English"**
io ho ***avuto***	"I have had"/"had"
tu hai ***avuto***	"you have had"/"had"
lui/lei ha ***avuto***	"he/she/it has had"/"had"
noi abbiamo ***avuto***	"we have had"/"had"
voi avete ***avuto***	"you have had"/"had"
loro hanno ***avuto***	"they have had"/"had"

Although there are some guidelines regarding what main verbs require the auxiliary verb *essere*, there isn't any proper, reliable rule. In case you do not have the opportunity to refer to a dictionary, the following list provides you with the most important guidelines to follow when deciding what auxiliary verb to use with Italian main verbs.

Use the auxiliary *essere* when using:

- verbs that express physical movement from or to a specific point

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
andare	"to go"
tornare	"to come back"
partire	"to leave"

- reflexive and pronominal verbs

For Example:

Italian	**"English"**
lavarsi	"to clean oneself"
morire	"to die"
nascere	"to be born"
diventare	"to become"
vivere	"to live"
succedere	"to happen," "to take place"
sembrare	"to seem"
piacere	"to like"

Use the auxiliary *avere* with all other verbs.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Palazzo Fortuny

Palazzo Fortuny ("Fortuny Palace") is a Venetian gothic palace located in the *sestriere* of *San Marco* area. The palace is named after its last owner, the great Spanish painter Marià Fortuny y de Madrazo, Italianized as Mariano Fortuny. Nowadays, it hosts an eponymous museum, which is also a popular, though not elitist, workshop for contemporary artists.

The noble family Pesaro, which resided there until the end of the eighteenth century, built the palace. After the Pesaro family left, the palace housed the *Accademia Filarmonica degli Orfei* ("Orfei Philharmonic Academy"), thence it'd be later known as *Palazzo Pesaro degli Orfei*.
Mariano Fortuny purchased the palace in order to make it a private atelier for his diversified artistic works. In addition to his highly developed painting skills, Fortuny was a versatile and knowledgeable artist who was interested in many fields, such as photography and stage design.
After his death, his wife Henriette donated the palace to the city of Venice. The city authorities decided to carry on the eclectic spirit of its old owner and decided to make it a place where artists from all parts of the world can gather and continue to experiment with many different artistic disciplines.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #23

Will Your Grand Italian Gesture Work?

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#23

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Paolo : Martina...
2. Martina : Paolo, ma cos'è successo in questa stanza?
3. Paolo : Sono palloncini a forma di cuore.
4. Martina : Per chi? Per me?
5. Paolo : Certo. Ascolta, voglio dirti una cosa.
6. Martina : Cosa?
7. Paolo : Credo di essermi innamorato di te.
8. Martina : Cosa? Ma se ci conosciamo appena!
9. Paolo : Forse non te ne sei mai accorta.
10. Martina : È uno scherzo, vero?
11. Paolo : No, per niente. Ti amo, Martina.
12. Martina : Veramente io...
13. Paolo : Vieni qui.
14. Martina : (sorridendo) Ma sei pazzo? Non vedi che la porta è aperta?
15. Paolo : A quello penseremo dopo. Ora baciami ancora. (la ribacia)

ENGLISH

1. Paolo : Martina...
2. Martina : Paolo, but what's happened in this room?
3. Paolo : Those are heart-shaped balloons.
4. Martina : For who? For me?
5. Paolo : Sure. Listen, I want to tell you something.
6. Martina : What?
7. Paolo : I think I am in love with you.
8. Martina : What? But we barely know each other!
9. Paolo : Maybe you never noticed.
10. Martina : It's a joke, right?
11. Paolo : No, not at all. I love you, Martina.
12. Martina : Actually I...
13. Paolo : Come here.
14. Martina : (smiling) Are you crazy? Don't you see the door is open?
15. Paolo : We'll think about that later. Now kiss me again. (he kisses her again)

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
ascoltare	to listen	verb	
conoscere	to know	verb	
succedere	to happen	verb	
stanza	room	noun	feminine
innamorarsi	to fall in love, love	verb	
pazzo	mad, crazy	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Mi piace ascoltare la musica classica. "I like listening to the classical music.""	Mi piace ascoltare la radio prima di andare a dormire. "I like to listen to the radio before going to sleep."
Ascoltiamo il discorso di Mario. "We are listening to Mario's speech."	Ascolta bene! "Listen well!"
Non ascoltare musica a volume alto. "Don't listen to music out loud."	Conosci il mio amico Mario? "Do you know my friend Mario?"
Ieri sera ho conosciuto un attore molto importante. "Yesterday evening, I met a very important actor."	Conosci qualche cantante italiano? "Do you know any Italian singers?"
Non è mai successo prima. "Never happened before."	Che ti è successo? "What happened to you?"
Questa stanza ha due finestre. "This room has two windows."	Questa è la mia stanza. "This is my room."
Sono innamorato di lei. "I've fallen in love with her."	E' pazzo! "He's crazy!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Usage of the *Passato Prossimo* Tense.
Paolo, ma cos'è successo in questa stanza?
"Paolo, but what's happened in this room?"

How we use the *passato prossimo* tense varies according to whether we employ it in the written or spoken language.

In the written language and formal spoken Italian, we use the *passato prossimo* tense as follows:

1) To convey any past action that the writer deems to be completed (whether it actually is or not) at the time when the statement is uttered. In this case, the *passato prossimo* works as present perfect in English.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
Avete comprato il pane?	"Have you bought bread?"
Hai visto Mario oggi?	"Have you seen Mario today?"
Non sono mai stati negli Stati Uniti.	"They have never been to the United States."

2) To communicate past actions whose consequences are related to the present time. This meaning is conveyed in English through the usage of either the simple past or the present perfect tenses.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
Nuoto bene perchè ho avuto un buon maestro.	"I can swim well because I had a good instructor."
Cesare è stato il più abile uomo di stato.	"Caesar has been the most skilled statesman."
Questa università è stata costruita dieci anni fa.	"This university was built ten years ago."

3) To convey recent past occurrences. The "recentness" value attached to this kind of past action is purely subjective. Even though scholars tried to regulate this aspect by setting arbitrary time limits, they have so far been unsuccessful. Of course, this does not mean that we can use the *passato prossimo* indiscriminately. The context we are writing in usually explains the difference between the distant and recent past.

For Example:

Italian	"English"
I cinque continenti emersero un miliardo di anni fa, laddove la storia umana è iniziata solamente quindicimila anni fa.	"The five continents emerged a billion years ago, whereas human history started only fifteen thousand years ago."
L'impero romano durò più di mille anni, la Repubblica italiana è stata fondata centocinquanta anni fa.	"The Roman Empire lasted for more than a thousand years; the Italian Republic was founded one hundred fifty years ago."
Sono andato in Egitto un anno fa.	"I went to Egypt one year ago."

As regards spoken colloquial language, in Northern Italy, people exclusively employ the *passato prossimo* tense to convey any past action, regardless of the context.

Similarly, in southern and central Italy, speakers tend to use the *passato remoto* tense (fully explained in our Lower Intermediate course) to communicate any past occurrences, regardless of the circumstances they took place in.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Piazza San Marco

The historical importance of *Piazza San Marco* ("St. Mark's Square") in Venice is enormous. First, it is the only square in Venice that's called *piazza*, whereas all other Venetian squares are called *campo* (literally, "field"). Even though it started becoming a square in the middle ages, it took its present aspect during the Renaissance by the will of the Venetian *dogi* ("doges"), who wished to display the wealth of the *Regina dei mari* ("Queen of Seas"), the name through which the Republic of Venice was known in Europe.

The piazza hosts Venice's most important historical buildings. The *Palazzo Ducale* used to be the meeting place of the Venetian senate and was therefore the political center of the city. In addition to its political role, the same *Palazzo Ducale* was also used as a high-security prison for either extremely dangerous or political criminals.
Piazza San Marco has always been the core of the city's public life, even of the least pleasant events. Public executions were held there, specifically between the columns of *Marco* and *Todaro*.

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #24

Do Me a Favor While You're in Italy!

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#24

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Paolo : Ehi John, grazie per prima.
2. John : Di nulla. Sono contento sia andato tutto a buon fine.
3. Paolo : Ti devo un favore.
4. John : Non ti preoccupare. Ehi Martina, sembra sia nata una nuova coppia, eh?
5. Martina : Eh eh, grazie.
6. John : Vi unite a noi per la settimana bianca domani?
7. Paolo : Partite per la montagna?
8. John : Sì, questa settimana c'è il ponte. Se non avete da lavorare unitevi a noi!
9. Martina : Beh, io credo di poter venire.
10. Paolo : Io dovrei sentire il capo, perché dovrei partire per lavoro.
11. Martina : Come, non stiamo insieme?
12. Paolo : Ehm, non lo so ancora, dovrei sentirlo.
13. Martina : Iniziamo bene!
14. Paolo : Lo chiamo subito, vediamo se riesco a posticipare!

ENGLISH

1. Paolo : Hey, John. Thanks for before.
2. John : You're welcome. I'm happy everything went fine.
3. Paolo : I owe you a favor.
4. John : Don't worry. Hey, Martina, it looks like a new couple is born, huh?
5. Martina : Hey, thanks.
6. John : Will you join us for the ski holiday tomorrow?
7. Paolo : Are you leaving for the mountains?
8. John : Yes, this weekend is a long one. If you don't have to work, join us!
9. Martina : Well, I think I could join you.
10. Paolo : I should call the boss, because I have to leave for work.
11. Martina : What, we won't be together?
12. Paolo : Ehm, I don't know yet, I should call him.
13. Martina : That's a good start!
14. Paolo : I will call him right away; let's see if I can postpone it.

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
favore	favor	noun	masculine
contento	happy, content	adjective	
lavorare	to work	verb	
sentire	to hear, to listen to	verb	
prima	before, earlier	adverb	
unire	to join, unite	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Potresti farmi un favore e tenere d'occhio la mia casa durante questo weekend? "Could you do me a favor and watch over my house this weekend?"	Mi faresti un favore? "Could you do me a favor?"

Paolo è contento. "Paolo is happy."	Sono contento. "I'm happy."
Se vieni a casa la nonna sarà contenta. "If you come home, grandmother will be happy."	Non lavorare troppo. "Don't work too much."
Lavoro in una fabbrica. "I work in a factory."	Sento gente urlare. "I (can) hear people screaming."
Parlo a voce bassa, mi senti? "I speak softly, can you hear me?"	Non lo sento da due giorni. "I haven't heard from him in two days."
Hai sentito cosa è successo? "Have you heard what happened?"	Faccio sempre colazione prima di andare al lavoro. "I always have breakfast before going to work."
Uniamoci a loro. "Let's join them."	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is on the Expressions Presented in the Dialogue.
Ti devo un favore.
"I owe you a favor."

In the dialogue above, John replies to Paolo's thanks saying *di nulla*. Both the expressions *di nulla* and *prego*, which do not translate literally into English, mean "You are welcome." We may use *di nulla* in both formal and informal Italian and, contrary to its English equivalent, it does not require either a subject or a verb. Please note that we use the literal translation of "You are welcome," *sei il benvenuto*, in Italian to welcome people to specific places.

For Example:

1. *Sei il benvenuto a casa mia ogni volta che vuoi venire.*
   "You are welcome to my house whenever you wish to come."

On the contrary, Paolo's statement *ti devo un favore* translates literally into English as "I owe you a favor." In this case, the verb *dovere* is not an auxiliary verb, but a standard transitive verb, which requires both a direct object (in this case, *un favore*) as well as an indirect object (*ti* = *a te*, "to you").

The *settimana bianca* (literally, "white week") is a well-established Italian tradition. It consists of a weeklong vacation (the exact duration may change, but it usually lasts between a few days and two weeks) during the Christmas holiday. Italians pack up their ski gear and go skiing on the *Alpi* ("Alps") or the *Appennini* mountain ranges. The popular resorts are *Cortina d'Ampezzo* and *Madonna di Campiglio*.

When explaining why he'll be going on vacation for the *settimana bianca*, John says that this week *c'è il ponte* (literally, "there is the bridge"). We use this expression, which we may translate into English as "long weekend," whenever public holidays take place on Fridays, the last working day of the week for the majority of people in Italy. In case of a longer weekend, in Italian we may specify the number of days, although this procedure is not normally necessary.

For Example:

1. *C'è un ponte di quattro giorni.*
   "We'll have a four-day weekend."

Originally, landlords used the expressions *settimana corta* ("short week") and *settimana lunga* ("long week") to mean, respectively, a renting period of five days per week as opposed to the full week. We also use the former to indicate weeks whose working days are fewer than five (usually four), whereas the latter means weeks whose working days are greater than five.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Unique Style of the Venetian Palace

The architectural shape of Venetian aristocratic palaces perfectly mirrors their two-fold role. In fact, noble families used their Venetian palaces both as luxurious private residences as well as the main trading centers of their businesses. Contrary to other noble families in Europe, almost all Venetian aristocrats were (often, overly wealthy) merchants engaged in international trading, mostly with Muslim countries. During the Middle Ages and early Renaissance, the Venetian Republic had complete control over the trade of Oriental spices, silk, and many other exotic goods that European nations could not obtain due to both their lack of expertise in seafaring and their tenuous diplomatic relations with the Middle Eastern countries.

The patrician palaces normally had two entrances, one for the members of the family and its guests, and the other for merchandise and serfs. The latter used to live in the palace, normally in its basement floor. The buildings also housed administrative offices and display rooms.
Even after the political and military decline of the republic, though the ancient vocation of trading had been gradually lost over the preceding four centuries, Venetian palaces were still built according to this fashion, thus respecting what became the "Venetian" style.

ItalianPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Newbie S2 #25

Italian Knock-Knock Jokes

CONTENTS

- Dialogue - Italian
  - Main
  - English
- Vocabulary
- Sample sentences
- Grammar
- Cultural insight

#25

DIALOGUE - ITALIAN

MAIN

1. Paolo : Ehi Martina, devo fare una chiamata, vado nell'altra stanza.
2. Martina : Ok, ti aspettiamo qui.
3. John : Non ti preoccupare. Il capo capirà.
4. Martina : Oh, lo spero sinceramente!
5. (Paolo ritorna)
6. John : Allora, com'è andata? Ti lascerà venire con noi?
7. Paolo : Sfortunatamente, no. Ha detto che devo andare a lavorare. Partirò domani con il primo treno della mattina.
8. Martina : Oh no, il nostro primo viaggio insieme!
9. John : È un peccato Paolo...ci saremmo potuti divertire insieme, mi dispiace. Sarai triste, immagino.
10. Paolo : Oh, non ti preoccupare, stavo solo scherzando.
11. John : Cosa?
12. Martina : Uno scherzo? Questo significa...che domani verrai con noi?
13. Paolo : Certo!
14. Martina : Evviva!
15. John : Sì!

ENGLISH

1. Paolo : Hey, Martina, I have to make a call, I'll go to the other room.
2. Martina : Okay, we'll wait for you here.
3. John : Don't worry. The boss will understand.
4. Martina : Oh, I really hope so!
5. (Paolo comes back)
6. John : So how did it go? Will he let you go with us?
7. Paolo : Sadly, no. He said I have to go to work. Tomorrow, I'll leave with the first train in the morning.
8. Martina : Oh no, our first trip together!
9. John : That's a pity Paolo...we could have had fun together, I'm sorry. You must be sad, I assume.
10. Paolo : Oh, don't worry, actually I was just joking.
11. John : What?
12. Martina : A joke? This means...that you're actually coming with us tomorrow?
13. Paolo : Sure!
14. Martina : Hurray!
15. John : Yes!

VOCABULARY

Italian	English	Class	Gender
sfortunatamente	unfortunately, unluckily	adverb	
altro	another, else	adjective	
viaggio	trip, travel	noun	masculine
significare	to mean, entail, signify	verb	
chiamata	call	noun	
capo	boss, chief	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Sfortunatamente, non abbiamo visto nessun cervo. "Unfortunately, we didn't see any deer."	Prendo un altro cioccolatino. "I'll take another chocolate."
Visiterò l'Africa durante il mio prossimo viaggio attorno al mondo. "I will visit Africa during my next trip around the world."	Voglio fare un viaggio. "I want to make a trip."
Cosa significa questo? "What does this mean?"	Ieri sera ho ricevuto tre chiamate. "I received three calls yesterday night."
Il nostro capo è americano. "Our boss is American."	Sei tu il capo. "You are the boss."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Reviewing Two Usages of *futuro semplice* ("Simple Future") Tense and Studying the Verb *dispiacersi* ("to be sorry," "to mind").
È un peccato Paolo...ci saremmo potuti divertire insieme, mi dispiace. Sarai triste, immagino.
"That's a pity Paolo...we could have had fun together, I'm sorry. You must be sad, I assume."

In today's dialogue, we see the Italian *futuro semplice* ("simple future") tense in two of its possible employments.

Its most frequent usage is to convey prospective occurrences. In this sense, it is identical to its English equivalent. Please note that using the *futuro semplice* implies that the speaker assumes its statement to be or become true, regardless of its actual outcome. For instance, John says *Il capo capirà* ("The boss will understand.").

The use of *futuro semplice* implies that John believes that his boss will almost certainly understand the situation and let him take a couple of days off. Had he been unsure about his boss's reply, he'd have used the *condizionale presente* ("present conditional"), as in *Il capo dovrebbe capire* ("The boss should understand.").

The second employment of *futuro semplice* we see in the dialogue consists of expressing assumptions related to the present time. John says *Sarai triste, immagino* (verb *essere*, "to be"), which literally means "You will be sad, I assume." We can translate this as meaning "You must be sad, I assume."

As we can see from the proper translation, this expression is in fact just an assumption (though likely to be true) that John made about his friend's feelings at moment he uttered it. It does not in any way refer to the future; it is simply an idiomatic usage of *futuro semplice* tense.

Finally, John uses the verb *dispiacersi* ("to be sorry," "to mind") in the sentence *mi dispiace*. Contrary to its English equivalent, the verb *dispiacersi* is a pronominal verb, and we can express its subject through the indirect object pronoun.

Italian	"English"
Ci dispiace di non essere arrivati in orario.	"We are sorry we didn't arrive on time."
Ti dispiace se apro la finestra?	"Do you mind if I open the window?"
Vi dispiace di essere stati indelicati con Luca, non è così?	"You are sorry for having been indelicate with Luca, isn't that so?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Chiesa di San Marco

The first *chiesa di San Marco* ("Church of St. Mark") in Venice was built next to *Palazzo Ducale* in 828, in order to host the mortal remains of the apostle St. Mark. According to the story, the two Venetian merchants Buono da Malamocco and Rustico da Torcello stole them from an unspecified place in Alexandria.

The Venetian *doge* (the elected chief of the former Venetian senate) Domenico Contarini erected the present basilica in 1063, closely following the same dimensions and shape of the earlier church. According to a popular legend, the body of St. Mark was found inside a pillar of the new basilica in 1094, the same year which the basilica was officially consecrated.
The *Basilica of San Marco* hosts a huge collection of pieces of art, which Venetian public authorities and private merchants gathered through the centuries. In particular, it hosts a large collection of Byzantine sculptures and pieces of furniture taken by the Venetian army in the sack of Constantinople (the present Istanbul, Turkey's capital city) during the Fourth Crusade in 1206.
The basilica has gone through many renovations during its history, due to natural accidents (mostly earthquakes and fires) and heterogeneous additions to both its interior and exterior façades.